



1
2
3
4

Document number: DSP1001

Date: 2011-06-30

Version: 1.1.0

5 Management Profile Specification Usage Guide

6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17

Document type: Specification

Document status: DMTF Standard

Document language: us-EN

18 Copyright Notice

19 Copyright © 2006, 2009, 2011 Distributed Management Task Force, Inc. (DMTF). All rights reserved.

20 DMTF is a not-for-profit association of industry members dedicated to promoting enterprise and systems
21 management and interoperability. Members and non-members may reproduce DMTF specifications and
22 documents, provided that correct attribution is given. As DMTF specifications may be revised from time to
23 time, the particular version and release date should always be noted.

24 Implementation of certain elements of this standard or proposed standard may be subject to third party
25 patent rights, including provisional patent rights (herein "patent rights"). DMTF makes no representations
26 to users of the standard as to the existence of such rights, and is not responsible to recognize, disclose,
27 or identify any or all such third party patent right, owners or claimants, nor for any incomplete or
28 inaccurate identification or disclosure of such rights, owners or claimants. DMTF shall have no liability to
29 any party, in any manner or circumstance, under any legal theory whatsoever, for failure to recognize,
30 disclose, or identify any such third party patent rights, or for such party's reliance on the standard or
31 incorporation thereof in its product, protocols or testing procedures. DMTF shall have no liability to any
32 party implementing such standard, whether such implementation is foreseeable or not, nor to any patent
33 owner or claimant, and shall have no liability or responsibility for costs or losses incurred if a standard is
34 withdrawn or modified after publication, and shall be indemnified and held harmless by any party
35 implementing the standard from any and all claims of infringement by a patent owner for such
36 implementations.

37 For information about patents held by third-parties which have notified the DMTF that, in their opinion,
38 such patent may relate to or impact implementations of DMTF standards, visit
39 <http://www.dmtf.org/about/policies/disclosures.php>.

CONTENTS

41	Foreword	8
42	Introduction	9
43	Document conventions.....	9
44	Typographical conventions	9
45	ABNF usage conventions	9
46	Deprecated material.....	9
47	Experimental material	10
48	1 Scope	11
49	2 Normative references	11
50	3 Terms and definitions	12
51	4 Symbols and abbreviated terms.....	21
52	5 Conformance.....	22
53	5.1 Profile and profile specification conformance	22
54	5.2 Implementation conformance	22
55	5.2.1 Interface implementation conformance	22
56	5.2.2 Full implementation conformance	23
57	5.2.3 Implementation conformance of multiple profiles.....	23
58	5.2.4 Implementation conformance of profile versions.....	23
59	5.2.5 Listener implementation conformance	24
60	5.2.6 Client implementation conformance	24
61	5.3 Instance conformance.....	24
62	5.4 DMTF conformance requirements	24
63	6 Concepts	25
64	6.1 Overview	25
65	6.2 Management domain	26
66	6.3 Managed object type.....	26
67	6.4 Managed environment and managed objects	26
68	6.5 Profile definition	26
69	6.6 Relationships between profile definition and management domain	27
70	6.6.1 Profile defined mappings.....	27
71	6.6.2 Existence and lifecycle of adaptation instances.....	27
72	6.6.3 Model effected control of managed objects in a managed environment.....	29
73	6.7 Events and indications	29
74	7 Profile definitions	30
75	7.1 General	30
76	7.2 Profile elements	30
77	7.2.1 General.....	30
78	7.2.2 Named profile elements.....	30
79	7.3 Usage of requirement levels	31
80	7.3.1 General.....	31
81	7.3.2 Usage of the "mandatory" requirement level.....	31
82	7.3.3 Usage of the "optional" requirement level	31
83	7.3.4 Usage of the "conditional" requirement level.....	32
84	7.3.5 Usage of the "conditional exclusive" requirement level.....	32
85	7.3.6 Usage of the "prohibited" requirement level	32
86	7.4 Definition of conditions.....	32
87	7.4.1 General.....	33

88	7.4.2	Profile implementation condition	33
89	7.4.3	Feature implementation condition	33
90	7.4.4	Class adaptation implementation condition	34
91	7.4.5	Instance existence condition	34
92	7.4.6	Property value condition	36
93	7.4.7	Managed environment condition	36
94	7.5	Discovery mechanisms	37
95	7.5.1	General	37
96	7.5.2	Discovery through an identified adaptation instance	37
97	7.5.3	Discovery through a related adaptation instance	37
98	7.5.4	Implementation discovery through specific property values	38
99	7.6	Definition of the profile identification	38
100	7.6.1	General	38
101	7.6.2	Registered profile name	38
102	7.6.3	Registered profile version	39
103	7.6.4	Registered organization name	39
104	7.6.5	Organizational contact	39
105	7.7	Definition of schema references	39
106	7.7.1	General	39
107	7.7.2	Schema version	39
108	7.7.3	Schema name	39
109	7.7.4	Schema organization	39
110	7.7.5	Schema experimental flag	39
111	7.8	Definition of profile categories	40
112	7.8.1	General	40
113	7.8.2	Autonomous profiles	40
114	7.8.3	Component profiles	40
115	7.9	Definition of profile relationships	40
116	7.9.1	Definition of profile references	40
117	7.9.2	Definition of profile derivation	42
118	7.9.3	Definition of scoping relationships	46
119	7.10	Definition of abstract and concrete profiles	49
120	7.10.1	Abstract profile	49
121	7.10.2	Concrete profile	50
122	7.11	Definition of the management domain	50
123	7.12	Definition of registry references	51
124	7.13	Definition of class adaptations	51
125	7.13.1	General	51
126	7.13.2	Requirements for definitions of all kinds of adaptations	52
127	7.13.3	Requirements for definitions of adaptations of ordinary classes and associations	61
128			
129	7.13.4	Requirements for the definition of indication adaptations	70
130	7.13.5	Abstract class adaptation	71
131	7.13.6	Trivial class adaptation	71
132	7.13.7	Examples of class adaptations	72
133	7.14	Requirements for profile registration	73
134	7.15	Requirements for the definition of features	73
135	7.15.1	Introduction	73
136	7.15.2	General feature requirements	74
137	7.15.3	Feature name	74
138	7.15.4	Feature requirement level	74
139	7.15.5	Feature granularity	74
140	7.15.6	Feature discovery	74
141	7.15.7	Feature requirements	75

142	7.15.8	Feature example.....	76
143	7.16	Requirements for the definition of use cases	78
144	7.16.1	General.....	78
145	7.16.2	Requirements for the definition of state descriptions	78
146	7.16.3	Requirements for the definition of preconditions.....	79
147	7.16.4	Requirements for the definition of flows of activities	79
148	7.16.5	Requirements for the definition of postconditions	79
149	7.17	Backward compatibility	80
150	7.18	Definition of experimental content	80
151	7.19	Deprecation of profile content.....	80
152	8	Profile general conventions and guidelines.....	81
153	8.1	General.....	81
154	8.2	Linguistic and notational conventions	81
155	8.3	Conventions and guidelines for diagrams	82
156	8.3.1	General.....	82
157	8.3.2	General diagram guidelines.....	83
158	8.3.3	Diagram color conventions.....	83
159	8.3.4	DMTF collaboration structure diagram guidelines.....	84
160	8.3.5	DMTF adaptation diagram guidelines	88
161	8.3.6	DMTF class diagram guidelines.....	90
162	8.3.7	DMTF object diagram guidelines.....	91
163	8.3.8	DMTF sequence diagram guidelines.....	93
164	8.3.9	Designation of deprecated or experimental elements in diagrams	93
165	9	Profile implementation requirements.....	93
166	9.1	General	93
167	9.2	Implementation requirements for a set of profiles	94
168	9.2.1	General.....	94
169	9.2.2	Implementation adaptation	94
170	9.2.3	Profile implementation context	94
171	9.2.4	Implementation optimizations.....	97
172	9.2.5	Schema requirements	97
173	9.3	Implementation requirements for implementation adaptations.....	97
174	9.3.1	General.....	97
175	9.3.2	Implementation requirements for properties.....	98
176	9.3.3	Implementation requirements for methods and operations.....	98
177	9.3.4	Instance requirements.....	100
178	9.3.5	Indication generation requirements	100
179	9.4	Merge algorithm	100
180	9.4.1	General.....	100
181	9.4.2	Merge algorithm steps.....	101
182	9.4.3	Profile implementation check.....	101
183	9.4.4	Adaptation implementation check	102
184	9.5	Implementation of deprecated definitions.....	102
185	10	Profile specification requirements	102
186	10.1	General	102
187	10.2	Profile specification conventions.....	103
188	10.2.1	Conventions for the specification of requirement levels.....	103
189	10.2.2	Conventions for the specification of implementation types	103
190	10.2.3	Conventions for the specification of conditional elements	103
191	10.2.3.1	G.....	103
192	10.2.4	Conventions for the specification of value constraints	104
193	10.3	Profile specification structures	107

194 10.3.1 General 107
 195 10.3.2 Condensed profile specification structure 108
 196 10.3.3 Traditional profile specification structure 108
 197 10.3.4 Usage of profile specification structures 110
 198 10.4 Requirements for profile specification clauses 110
 199 10.4.1 General 110
 200 10.4.2 Requirements for the numbering of profile specification clauses and subclauses... 111
 201 10.4.3 Requirements for the specification of the "Terms and definitions" clause 111
 202 10.4.4 Requirements for the specification of the "Conformance" clause 112
 203 10.4.5 Requirements for the specification of the "Synopsis" clause 112
 204 10.4.6 Requirements for the specification of the "Description" clause 119
 205 10.4.7 Requirements for the specification of the "Implementation" clause 120
 206 10.4.8 Requirements for the specification of the "Methods" clause 133
 207 10.4.9 Requirements for the specification of the "Use cases" clause 137
 208 10.4.10 Requirements for the specification of the "CIM elements" clause 139
 209 Annex A (Informative) Examples 142
 210 A.1 General 142
 211 A.2 Example of a "Synopsis" clause 142
 212 A.3 Example of a "Description" clause 145
 213 A.4 Example of an "Implementation" clause 147
 214 A.4.1 Example of the general layout of an "Implementation" clause 147
 215 A.4.2 Example of feature definitions 147
 216 A.4.3 Example of the "Conventions" subclause 149
 217 A.4.4 Examples of subclauses defining adaptations 150
 218 A.4.5 Examples of subclauses defining indication adaptations 159
 219 A.5 Example of the "Use cases" clause 163
 220 Annex B (informative) Regular expression syntax 168
 221 Annex C (informative) Change history 172
 222 Bibliography 174
 223

224	Figures	
225	Figure 1 – Profile and management domain	25
226	Figure 2 – Existence of adaptation instances	28
227	Figure 3 – Complexity when an implementation decision depends on a runtime element	35
228	Figure 4 – Autonomous profile with optional component profiles	48
229	Figure 5 – Two variants of a component profile using another component profile	49
230	Figure 6 – Class adaptation reference example	53
231	Figure 7 – DMTF collaboration structure diagram of an Example Sensors profile	54
232	Figure 8 – Examples of DMTF collaboration structure diagrams	76
233	Figure 9 – Example of a DMTF collaboration structure diagram	86
234	Figure 10 – Examples of DMTF adaptation diagrams	89
235	Figure 11 – Examples of DMTF class diagrams	91
236	Figure 12 – Example of profiles and resulting profile implementations	95
237	Figure 13 – Example of merging of adaptations into implementation adaptations	96
238	Figure 14 – Traditional and condensed profile structures	110
239		
240	Tables	
241	Table 1 – Example management domain definition	50
242	Table 2 – Specification recommendations	82
243	Table 3 – Example of string property format definition	105
244	Table 4 – Requirements for profile specification clauses	110
245	Table 5 – Common text for the "Terms and definitions" clause of profile specifications	112
246	Table 6 – Requirements for the specification of profile attributes	113
247	Table 7 – Requirements for columns of the table of profile references	115
248	Table 8 – Requirements for columns of the tables of registry references	116
249	Table 9 – Requirements for columns of the table of features	116
250	Table 10 – Requirements for columns of the table of adaptations	117
251	Table 11 – Requirements for columns of the table of use cases	119
252	Table 12 – Profile diagram types	120
253	Table 13 – Requirements for columns of "Element requirements" tables	124
254	Table 14 – Requirements for columns in "Input value requirements" tables	127
255	Table 15 – Requirements for columns in "Method parameter requirements" tables	128
256	Table 16 – Requirements for columns of the "Error reporting requirements" table	131
257	Table 17 – Requirements for columns of the standard message table	131
258	Table 18 – Requirements for columns in method parameter tables	134
259	Table 19 – Requirements for columns of the return value table	134
260	Table 20 – Profile convention options	135
261		

262

Foreword

263 The *Management Profile Specification Usage Guide* (DSP1001) was prepared by the DMTF Profile
264 Infrastructure Working Group.

265 DMTF is a not-for-profit association of industry members dedicated to promoting enterprise and systems
266 management and interoperability. For information about the DMTF, see <http://www.dmtf.org>.

267 **Acknowledgments**

268 DMTF acknowledges the following individuals for their contributions to this guide:

- 269 • Jim Davis, WBEM Solutions
- 270 • George Ericson, EMC
- 271 • Steve Hand, Symantec
- 272 • Jon Hass, Dell
- 273 • Michael Johanssen, IBM
- 274 • Andreas Maier, IBM
- 275 • Aaron Merkin, Dell
- 276 • Karl Schopmeyer, DMTF Fellow
- 277 • Paul von Behren, Sun Microsystems

278

279

Introduction

280 The information in this guide should be sufficient for profile authors to incorporate all the semantic and
 281 formal elements required for the specification of a management profile. The information in this guide
 282 should be sufficient for profile implementers to ascertain the implementation requirements imposed by
 283 this guide, by the set of implemented profiles, by the CIM schema and by other appropriate specifications.

284 Document conventions

285 Typographical conventions

286 Any text in this document is in normal text font, with the following exceptions:

- 287 • Document titles are marked in *italics*.¹
- 288 • Important terms that are used for the first time are marked in *italics*.
- 289 • Terms include a link to the term definition in the "Terms and definitions" clause, enabling easy
 290 navigation to the term definition.
- 291 • ABNF rules are in `monospaced font`.

292 ABNF usage conventions

293 Format definitions in this document are specified using ABNF (see [RFC5234](#)), with the following
 294 deviations:

- 295 • Literal strings are to be interpreted as case-sensitive Unicode characters, as opposed to the
 296 definition in [RFC5234](#) that interprets literal strings as case-insensitive US-ASCII characters.
- 297 • The following ABNF rules are frequently applied in this guide:

298 `CR = %x0D`

299 `CRLF = CR LF`

300 `HTAB = %x09`

301 `LF = %x0A`

302 `LWSP = *(WSP / CRLF WSP)`

303 `SP = %x20`

304 `WS = 1*WSP`

305 `WSP = SP / HTAB`

306 Deprecated material

307 Deprecated material is not recommended for use in new development efforts. Existing and new
 308 implementations may use this material, but they shall move to the favored approach as soon as possible.
 309 CIM services shall implement any deprecated elements as required by this document in order to achieve

¹ Note that referencing a profile by its name does not constitute a document title; for details, see 7.6.2.

310 backwards compatibility. Although CIM clients may use deprecated elements, they are directed to use the
311 favored elements instead.

312 Deprecated material should contain references to the last published version that included the deprecated
313 material as normative material and to a description of the favored approach.

314 The following typographical convention indicates deprecated material:

315 **DEPRECATED**

316 Deprecated material appears here.

317 **DEPRECATED**

318 In places where this typographical convention cannot be used (for example, tables or figures), the
319 "DEPRECATED" label is used alone.

320 **Experimental material**

321 Experimental material has yet to receive sufficient review to satisfy the adoption requirements set forth by
322 the DMTF. Experimental material is included in this document as an aid to implementers who are
323 interested in likely future developments. Experimental material may change as implementation
324 experience is gained. It is likely that experimental material will be included in an upcoming revision of the
325 document. Until that time, experimental material is purely informational.

326 The following typographical convention indicates experimental material:

327 **EXPERIMENTAL**

328 Experimental material appears here.

329 **EXPERIMENTAL**

330 In places where this typographical convention cannot be used (for example, tables or figures), the
331 "EXPERIMENTAL" label is used alone.

332

333

Management Profile Specification Usage Guide

334 1 Scope

335 This guide defines the usage of and requirements for management profiles and management profile
336 specification documents.

337 A *management profile* (short: *profile*) defines a management interface between implementations of a
338 WBEM server and a WBEM client. In addition, a profile may define a management interface between a
339 WBEM server and a WBEM listener for the delivery of indications. The management interfaces establish
340 a contract between the involved WBEM components but are not an API because they do not define a
341 programming interface. A profile defines a model and its behavior in the context of a management
342 domain. Model and behavior are defined by selecting, specializing, and sometimes constraining elements
343 from a schema and the set of operations (including indication delivery operations) for a particular
344 purpose. A profile establishes a relationship between the model and the management domain. A profile
345 defines use cases on the model that illustrate client visible behavior.

346 A *management profile specification* document (short: *profile specification*) contains the textual
347 specification of one or more management profiles and may also contain content that does not specify a
348 profile.

349 Profiles and profile specifications may be owned by DMTF or by other organizations.

350 The target audience for this guide is anyone creating profiles or profile specifications (regardless of
351 whether these are published by DMTF or published by other organizations), and implementers of profiles.

352 NOTE This guide is not a template for a profile specification. To create a profile specification, start with the
353 publishing organization's template and add clauses as described in this guide. For profiles published by
354 DMTF, use [DSP1000](#).

355 NOTE This guide is not a profile specification; it defines the requirements for creating profiles or profile
356 specifications.

357 2 Normative references

358 The following referenced documents are indispensable for the application of this guide. For dated or
359 versioned references, only the edition cited (including any corrigenda or DMTF update versions) applies.
360 For undated and unversioned references, the latest published edition of the referenced document
361 (including any corrigenda or DMTF update versions) applies.

362 DMTF DSP0004, *CIM Infrastructure Specification 2.6*,
363 http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP0004_2.6.pdf

364 DMTF DSP0215, *Server Management Managed Element Addressing Specification 1.0*,
365 http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP0215_1.0.pdf

366 DMTF DSP0223, *Generic Operations 1.0*,
367 http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP0223_1.0.pdf

368 DMTF DSP0228, *Message Registry XML Schema 1.1*,
369 http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP0228_1.1.xsd

370 DMTF DSP1033, *Profile Registration Profile 1.0*,
371 http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP1033_1.0.pdf

- 372 DMTF DSP1053, *Base Metrics Profile 1.1*,
373 http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP1053_1.1.pdf
- 374 DMTF DSP1054, *Indications Profile 1.1*,
375 http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP1054_1.1.pdf
- 376 DMTF DSP4004, *DMTF Release Process 2.3*,
377 http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP4004_2.3.pdf
- 378 DMTF DSP8016, *WBEM Operations Message Registry 1.0*,
379 http://schemas.dmtf.org/wbem/messageregistry/1/dsp8016_1.0.xml
- 380 DMTF DSP8020, *Message Registry XML Schema Specification 1.0*,
381 http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP8020_1.0.xsd
- 382 IETF RFC3629, *UTF-8, a transformation format of ISO 10646*, November 2003,
383 <http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3629>
- 384 IETF RFC5234, *ABNF: Augmented BNF for Syntax Specifications*, January 2008,
385 <http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc5234>
- 386 ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2:2004, *Rules for the structure and drafting of International Standards*,
387 <http://isotc.iso.org/livelink/livelink.exe?func=ll&objId=4230456&objAction=browse&sort=subtype>
- 388 Object Management Group, *OMG UML Superstructure, OMG Unified Modeling Language (OMG UML)*
389 *Superstructure 2.1.2*
- 390 The Open Group, "Regular Expressions" in *The Single UNIX® Specification, Version 2*,
391 <http://www.opengroup.org/onlinepubs/7908799/xbd/re.html>

392 **3 Terms and definitions**

393 In this guide, some terms and verbal phrases have a specific meaning beyond the normal English
394 meaning. Those terms and verbal phrases are defined in this clause.

395 The verbal phrases "shall" ("required"), "shall not", "should" ("recommended"), "should not" ("not
396 recommended"), "may", "need not" ("not required"), "can" and "cannot" in this document are to be
397 interpreted as described in [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#), Annex H. The verbal phrases in parenthesis are
398 alternatives for the preceding verbal phrase, for use in exceptional cases when the preceding verbal
399 phrase cannot be used for linguistic reasons. Note that [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#), Annex H specifies
400 additional alternatives. Occurrences of such additional alternatives shall be interpreted in their normal
401 English meaning.

402 The terms "clause", "subclause", "paragraph", "annex" in this document are to be interpreted as described
403 in [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#), Clause 5.

404 The terms "normative" and "informative" in this document are to be interpreted as described in [ISO/IEC](#)
405 [Directives, Part 2](#), Clause 3. In this guide, clauses, subclauses or annexes indicated with "(informative)"
406 as well as notes and examples do not contain normative content.

407 The terms defined in [DSP0004](#) and [DSP0223](#) apply to this guide.

408 **3.1**

409 **abstract**

410 a possible implementation type of class adaptations
411 For details, see 7.13.5.

- 412 **3.2**
413 **abstract class adaptation**
414 a class adaptation with an implementation type of "abstract".
415 The requirements of abstract class adaptations apply only in the context of other class adaptations that
416 use them as base adaptations.
417 For details, see 7.13.5.
- 418 **3.3**
419 **abstract profile**
420 a special kind of profile specifying common elements and behavior as a base for derived profiles
421 For a complete definition, see 7.9.2.11.
- 422 **3.4**
423 **adaptation**
424 short form for class adaptation
- 425 **3.5**
426 **adaptation instance**
427 an instance of an adapted class that complies with all requirements of the class adaptation
428 For details see 5.3.
- 429 **3.6**
430 **adapted class**
431 a class that is the subject of a class adaptation
432 For details, see 7.13.
- 433 **3.7**
434 **autonomous profile**
435 a profile that addresses an autonomous and self-contained management domain
436 For details, see 7.8.2.
- 437 **3.8**
438 **backward compatibility**
439 a characteristic of profiles enabling clients written against prior minor versions of a profile to use the
440 functionality specified by that version in the context of a profile implementation of a later minor version,
441 without requiring modifications of the client
442 For a complete definition, see 7.17.
- 443 **3.9**
444 **base adaptation**
445 a class adaptation that is used as the base for another class adaptation
446 For details, see 7.13.2.1.
- 447 **3.10**
448 **base profile**
449 a profile that is used as the base for another profile
450 For details, see 7.9.1 and 7.9.2.
- 451 **3.11**
452 **central class adaptation**
453 a specifically designated class adaptation in a profile
454 The central class adaptation is the focal point of the profile. For a complete definition, see 7.9.3.2.
- 455 **3.12**
456 **class**
457 if used without qualification this term refers to a CIM class that may also be an association class or an
458 indication class. To refer to a CIM class that is not an association class or an indication class, use the
459 term "ordinary class". For a complete definition, see [DSP0004](#).

- 460 **3.13**
461 **class adaptation**
462 a named profile element that defines requirements and constraints on a class
463 A class adaptation adapts a class definition from a schema for a particular purpose and may be based on
464 other class adaptations.
465 For a complete definition, see 7.13.
- 466 **3.14**
467 **client**
468 a WBEM client that exploits applicable portions of a profile
469 See also the term "implementation".
- 470 **3.15**
471 **component profile**
472 a profile that addresses a subset of a management domain
473 For details, see 7.8.3.
- 474 **3.16**
475 **concrete profile**
476 any profile that is not an abstract profile
477 For a complete definition, see 7.10.2.
- 478 **3.17**
479 **concrete class adaptation**
480 any class adaptation that is not an abstract class adaptation
481 For details, see 7.13.5.
- 482 **3.18**
483 **condition**
484 a specification mechanism in profiles that determines whether conditional or conditional exclusive profile
485 elements shall be implemented
486 For a complete definition, see 7.4.
- 487 **3.19**
488 **conditional**
489 a requirement level indicating that the subject profile requires the implementation of the designated profile
490 element only under certain conditions, and otherwise leaves the decision to implement the designated
491 profile element to the implementation
492 See 7.3 for usage considerations, and 9.2 for implementation considerations.
- 493 **3.20**
494 **conditional exclusive**
495 a requirement level indicating that the subject profile requires the implementation of the designated profile
496 element only under certain conditions, and otherwise prohibits the implementation of the designated
497 profile element
498 See 7.3 for usage considerations, and 9.2 for implementation considerations.
- 499 **3.21**
500 **conditional profile**
501 a used profile that is referenced by a profile reference with the conditional requirement level
- 502 **3.22**
503 **conditional exclusive profile**
504 a used profile that is referenced by a profile reference with the conditional exclusive requirement level

- 505 **3.23**
506 **deprecated**
507 keyword indicating that a profile element or profile defined behavior is outdated and has been replaced by
508 newer constructs
509 For details, see 7.17.
- 510 **3.24**
511 **derived profile**
512 a profile that is based on a referenced profile
513 For a complete definition, see 7.9.2.
- 514 **3.25**
515 **discovery mechanism**
516 a CIM based mechanism yielding a Boolean result that enables clients to discover whether optional,
517 conditional or conditional exclusive profile elements are implemented or available
518 For a complete definition, see 7.5.
- 519 **3.26**
520 **error reporting requirement**
521 a requirement stated as part of a method requirement or operation requirement to report an error situation
522 For details, see 7.13.3.2.4 and 7.13.3.3.6.
- 523 **3.27**
524 **event**
525 an observable occurrence of a phenomenon of interest
526 For details, see 6.7.
- 527 **3.28**
528 **exposed property or method**
529 a property or method that is available to clients using an adaptation
530 The set of properties or methods exposed by an adaptation is the union of all properties or methods
531 defined in the adapted class and its superclasses. In the case where a property or method overrides a
532 property or method defined in a superclass, the combined effects are exposed as a single property or
533 method.
- 534 **3.29**
535 **feature**
536 a profile element that groups the decisions for the implementation of one or more profile elements into a
537 single decision
538 This grouping is established by defining the implementation of other profile elements dependent on the
539 implementation of the feature.
540 For a complete definition, see 7.15.
- 541 **3.30**
542 **implementation**
543 a WBEM server that implements applicable portions of one or more profiles
544 For example, in server-side infrastructures using CIM providers, implementation refers to the WBEM
545 server and the set of providers that implement applicable portions of the set of profiles, that is, the
546 implementation adaptation set.
547 For details, see clause 9.
- 548 **3.31**
549 **implementation adaptation**
550 an implementation-required adaptation that merges the requirements of its base adaptations and of other
551 sources such as the schema definition of the adapted class, the operations specification or registry
552 elements
553 For a complete definition, see 9.2.2.

- 554 **3.32**
555 **implementation adaptation set**
556 the set of implementation adaptations required to be implemented as part of an implementation
557 For a complete definition, see 9.2.1.
- 558 **3.33**
559 **implementation-required**
560 a phrase indicating that the implementation of a profile or profile element is required within an
561 implementation, including the case where an optional profile or profile element was selected to be
562 implemented
563 For a complete definition, see 9.2.1.
- 564 **3.34**
565 **implementation type**
566 a type assigned to an adaptation that details how the adaptation is to be implemented
567 For a complete definition, see 7.13.2.5.
- 568 **3.35**
569 **incompatibility**
570 a change that breaks backward compatibility
- 571 **3.36**
572 **indication**
573 the notification about an event that occurred
- 574 **3.37**
575 **indication adaptation**
576 an adaptation of an indication class
- 577 **3.38**
578 **indication-generation requirement**
579 a requirement that states one or more events (see 6.7), each of which individually requires the generation
580 of a particular indication
581 For details, see 7.13.4.2.
- 582 **3.39**
583 **input value requirement**
584 a requirement stated as part of a property requirement, or of a parameter requirement within a method
585 requirement, that requires that the implementation accepts a specific input value
586 For details, see 7.13.2.11.
- 587 **3.40**
588 **instance requirement**
589 a requirement that defines how (and in some cases also under which conditions) managed objects are to
590 be represented by adaptation instances
591 For details, see 7.13.3.4.
- 592 **3.41**
593 **listener**
594 a WBEM listener that implements applicable portions of the Indications profile (see [DSP1054](#))
- 595 **3.42**
596 **management domain**
597 area of work or field of activity with common management requirements, common terminology, and
598 related management functionality
599 For details, see 6.2.

- 600 **3.43**
601 **managed environment**
602 a concrete occurrence of the management domain. A managed environment is composed of managed
603 objects
604 For details, see 6.4.
- 605 **3.44**
606 **managed object**
607 a physical entity, a service, or other kind of resource that exists independently of its use in management
608 Managed objects exist in managed environments.
609 For details, see 6.4.
- 610 **3.45**
611 **managed object type**
612 a conceptual generalization or type of managed object
613 For details, see 6.3.
- 614 **3.46**
615 **management profile**
616 definition of a management interface between a WBEM server and a WBEM client or a WBEM listener
617 For a complete definition, see clause 1.
- 618 **3.47**
619 **management profile specification**
620 a specification document that contains the textual specification of one or more management profiles and,
621 optionally, content that does not represent a management profile
622 For a complete definition, see clause 1.
- 623 **3.48**
624 **mandatory**
625 a requirement level indicating that the subject profile unconditionally requires the implementation of the
626 designated profile element
627 See 7.3 for usage considerations, and 9.2 for implementation considerations.
- 628 **3.49**
629 **mandatory profile**
630 a used profile that is referenced by a profile reference with the mandatory requirement level
- 631 **3.50**
632 **match**
633 keyword indicating that a property or parameter value is within the values specified by a pattern
634 For details see 10.2.4.
- 635 **3.51**
636 **method requirement**
637 a requirement stated as part of a class adaptation that defines requirements and constraints on a method
638 exposed by the adapted class
639 For details, see 7.13.3.2.
- 640 **3.52**
641 **message registry**
642 a published registry of messages formatted as defined in [DSP0228](#)
- 643 **3.53**
644 **metric requirement**
645 a requirement stated as part of a class adaptation that defines requirements and constraints on a metric
646 defined in a metric registry
647 For details, see 7.13.3.5.

- 648 **3.54**
649 **metric registry**
650 a published registry of metric definitions, and optionally statistics definitions, formatted as defined in
651 [DSP8020](#)
- 652 **3.55**
653 **named profile element**
654 a profile element that is assigned a name with profile name scope
655 For details, see 7.2.2.
- 656 **3.56**
657 **operation requirement**
658 a requirement stated as part of a class adaptation that defines requirements and constraints on an
659 operation defined in an operations specification
660 For details, see 7.13.3.3.
- 661 **3.57**
662 **operations specification**
663 a specification that specifies operations, their semantics and the model and behavior associated to them
664 Examples are [DSP0223](#) and [DSP0200](#).
- 665 **3.58**
666 **optional**
667 a requirement level indicating that the subject profile leaves the decision to implement the designated
668 profile element to the implementation
669 See 7.3 for usage considerations, and 9.2 for implementation considerations.
- 670 **3.59**
671 **optional profile**
672 a used profile that is referenced by a profile reference with the optional requirement level
- 673 **3.60**
674 **ordinary class**
675 a class that is not an association class or an indication class
676 For a complete definition, see [DSP0004](#).
- 677 **3.61**
678 **organization**
679 in this guide, refers to a consortium, standards group, company, or business entity creating a
680 management profile
- 681 **3.62**
682 **pattern**
683 specification of the permissible values for a property or parameter
684 See also the term "match", and for details see 10.2.4.
- 685 **3.63**
686 **profile**
687 synonym for management profile
688 See 3.46, and for a complete definition, see clause 1.
- 689 **3.64**
690 **profile defined model**
691 a model of a management domain (or a subset of a management domain) defined by a profile that is
692 composed of class adaptations
693 For details, see 6.1.

- 694 **3.65**
695 **profile derivation**
696 profile derivation establishes a referenced profile as the base profile of the referencing profile
697 For details, see 7.9.1 and 7.9.2.
- 698 **3.66**
699 **profile element**
700 formal elements that this guide establishes to be specified by profiles
701 For a complete definition, see 7.2.
- 702 **3.67**
703 **profile implementation**
704 a subset of an implementation that realizes the requirements of a particular profile in a particular profile
705 implementation context
- 706 **3.68**
707 **profile implementation context**
708 a context in which a profile or an adaptation is implemented
709 For a complete definition, see 9.2.3.
- 710 **3.69**
711 **profile specification**
712 synonym for management profile specification
713 See 3.47, and for a complete definition see clause 1.
- 714 **3.70**
715 **profile reference**
716 a named profile element that references another profile
717 For details, see 7.9.1.
- 718 **3.71**
719 **profile usage**
720 a use of the referenced profile established by a referencing profile
721 For details, see 7.9.1.
- 722 **3.72**
723 **prohibited**
724 a requirement level indicating that the subject profile prohibits the implementation of the designated
725 profile element
726 See 7.3 for usage considerations, and 9.2 for implementation considerations.
- 727 **3.73**
728 **property requirement**
729 a requirement stated as part of a class adaptation that defines requirements and constraints on a property
730 exposed by the adapted class.
731 For details, see 7.13.2.8.
- 732 **3.74**
733 **referenced profile**
734 a profile that is referenced by another profile, establishing either profile derivation or a profile usage
735 For a complete definition, see 7.9
- 736 **3.75**
737 **referencing profile**
738 a profile that references another profile, establishing either profile derivation or a profile usage
739 For a complete definition, see 7.9.

- 740 **3.76**
741 **registry reference**
742 a named profile element referencing a message registry or a metric registry
743 For details, see 7.12.
- 744 **3.77**
745 **related profile**
746 deprecated synonym for referenced profile
- 747 **3.78**
748 **requirement level**
749 designator that indicates the requirement for implementing profile elements or used profiles
- 750 **3.79**
751 **schema**
752 a named set of classes with a single defining authority or owning organization
753 The classes in a schema have the same schema prefix in their class name. For a complete definition, see
754 [DSP0004](#).
- 755 NOTE DMTF defines two schemas: The Common Information Model (schema prefix CIM) and the Problem
756 Resolution Schema (schema prefix PRS)
- 757 **3.80**
758 **schema element**
759 generally, refers to schema elements as defined in [DSP0004](#)
760 In this guide, the term is used for the subset of schema elements that may be constrained by profiles:
761 classes (including association classes and indication classes), properties (including references), methods,
762 and parameters
- 763 **3.81**
764 **scoping class adaptation**
765 a specifically designated class adaptation in a profile that is the algorithmic focal point for identifying
766 profile conformance when using the scoping class methodology.
767 For a complete definition, see 7.9.3.3.
- 768 **3.82**
769 **scoped profile**
770 a profile that receives a scope provided by a scoping profile. Synonymous with component profile
771 For details, see 7.9.3.
- 772 **3.83**
773 **scoping path**
774 an association traversal path between the central class adaptation and the scoping class adaptation.
775 For details, see 7.9.3.4.
- 776 **3.84**
777 **scoping profile**
778 a profile that provides a scope to a scoped profile by defining a class adaptation that is compatible with
779 the scoping class adaptation defined by a scoped profile
780 For details, see 7.9.3.
- 781 **3.85**
782 **span of a class adaptation**
783 the directed acyclic graph that contains the class adaptation, all (direct or indirect) base adaptations of the
784 class adaptation, the adapted class, and all its superclasses.
785 For a complete definition, see 7.13.2.1.

- 786 **3.86**
787 **state description**
788 a named profile element that describes of the state of an instance of (a subset of) the model defined by a
789 profile at a particular point in time
790 For a complete definition, see 7.16.2.
- 791 **3.87**
792 **subject profile**
793 a profile created or verified in conformance to this guide
- 794 **3.88**
795 **trivial class adaptation**
796 a class adaptation that does not add requirements beyond those defined by the adapted class and, if
797 defined, by its base adaptations
798 For details, see 10.4.7.4.
- 799 **3.89**
800 **use case**
801 a named profile element that defines an interaction of an external client and an implementation in the
802 execution of steps required to be performed in the realization of functionality defined in a profile
803 For details, see 7.16.
- 804 **3.90**
805 **used profile**
806 a referenced profile that is used by the referencing profile
- 807 **3.91**
808 **WBEM client**
809 a CIM client (see [DSP0004](#)) that supports a WBEM protocol
810 A WBEM client originates WBEM server operations. This definition does not imply any particular
811 implementation architecture or scope, such as a client library component or an entire management
812 application. For details, see [DSP0223](#).
- 813 **3.92**
814 **WBEM listener**
815 a CIM listener (see [DSP0004](#)) that supports a WBEM protocol
816 A WBEM listener processes WBEM listener operations. This definition does not imply any particular
817 implementation architecture or scope, such as a client library component or an entire management
818 application. For details, see [DSP0223](#).
- 819 **3.93**
820 **WBEM protocol**
821 a communications protocol between WBEM client, WBEM server and WBEM listener
822 A WBEM protocol defines how the WBEM operations work, on top of an underlying protocol layer (for
823 example, HTTP, SOAP, or TCP). For details, see [DSP0223](#).
- 824 **3.94**
825 **WBEM server**
826 a CIM server (see [DSP0004](#)) that supports a WBEM protocol
827 A WBEM server processes WBEM server operations, and originates WBEM listener operations. This
828 definition does not imply any particular implementation architecture, such as a separation into generic and
829 adaptation-specific (provider) components. For details, see [DSP0223](#).

830 **4 Symbols and abbreviated terms**

- 831 Most of these symbols and abbreviated terms are also applicable to profile specifications.
- 832 NOTE A list of symbols and abbreviated terms to be included in profile specifications is provided in [DSP1000](#).

833 For the purposes of this guide, the following symbols and abbreviated terms apply, in addition to those
834 defined in [DSP0004](#) and [DSP0223](#):

835 **4.1**

836 **ACID**

837 atomicity, consistency, isolation, and durability

838 **4.2**

839 **CSD**

840 DMTF collaboration structure diagram

841 For details, see 8.3.4.

842 **4.3**

843 **PUG**

844 Profile Usage Guide (the usage guide for specifying profiles specified in this document, DSP1001)

845 **4.4**

846 **UFcT**

847 User Friendly class Tag, as defined in [DSP0215](#)

848 **4.5**

849 **UFIT**

850 User Friendly instance Tag, as defined in [DSP0215](#)

851 **5 Conformance**

852 This clause defines conformance requirements for profiles, profile specifications, implementations, and
853 instances.

854 **5.1 Profile and profile specification conformance**

855 A profile is conformant to this guide if it satisfies all normative requirements defined in this guide for
856 profiles. The normative requirements for profiles are detailed in clause 7 and in clause 8.

857 A profile specification is conformant to this guide if it satisfies all normative requirements defined in this
858 guide for profile specifications. The normative requirements for profile specifications are detailed in
859 clause 10 .

860 **5.2 Implementation conformance**

861 **5.2.1 Interface implementation conformance**

862 A profile implementation is interface conformant to the profile if it conforms to all profile requirements that
863 are defined only in terms of the profile defined model. Interface implementation conformance does not
864 cover the relationship of instances and managed objects.

865 Interface conformance can be validated exclusively by the use of the profile defined interface; this
866 validation approach is also referred to as black box testing.

867 Examples of requirements defined only in terms of the model are as follows:

- 868 • Value constraints that restrict a property value to a set of possible values, such as restricting the
869 value of an EnabledState property to the values 2 (Enabled) or 3 (Disabled)

- 870 • Requirements for the existence of instances as a result of the successful execution of an
871 operation or method

872 NOTE However, it should be noted that if such a test is performed by creating the instance in a first step, and
873 obtaining the instance in a second step, it is absolutely possible that the instance was already modified or
874 deleted again after the first step, but before the second step is performed. For that reason a more realistic
875 test is checking the dependency between the instance and the managed object that it represents. See
876 5.2.2 for white box testing, and see also 6.6.2 for the existence of instances.

877 Examples of requirements that are not defined only in terms of the model are as follows:

- 878 • The requirement that specific managed objects are to be represented by instances
- 879 • The requirement that a property value shall reflect a part of the state of a managed object, such
880 as stating that the value 2 (Enabled) of an EnabledState property corresponds to the On state of
881 the managed object
- 882 • The requirement that the execution of an operation or method causes a specified change in the
883 managed environment, such as the activation of a managed object in the case where a change
884 of the EnabledState property to 2 (Enabled) in the CIM instance representing the managed
885 object is requested

886 5.2.2 Full implementation conformance

887 Full implementation conformance extends interface implementation conformance by also considering
888 profile defined requirements that establish the relationship of the profile defined model and the managed
889 environment.

890 Full implementation conformance can be validated only by crosschecking the situation in the managed
891 environment with the situation as viewed through the profile defined interface. Consequently, the
892 validation of full implementation conformance requires direct access to the managed environment such
893 that the situation inspected through that direct access can be cross checked against the situation
894 presented by an implementation through the profile defined model; this validation approach is also
895 referred to as white box testing.

896 5.2.3 Implementation conformance of multiple profiles

897 An implementation that implements multiple profiles is conformant to that set of profiles, if it is conformant
898 to each profile.

899 NOTE Profiles may have dependencies, for example, class adaptations in one profile being based on managed
900 environments in other profiles.

901 5.2.4 Implementation conformance of profile versions

902 Profile versions are identified with the complete set of version numbers as defined in [DSP4004](#): major,
903 minor, and update version number. However, as defined in 7.9.1, a subject profile refers to referenced
904 profiles by specifying only the major and minor version number, implying the latest published update
905 versions of the referenced profiles. Consequently it is possible that various implementations of a
906 comprehensive set of profiles (such as an identified version of a particular subject profile, and all its
907 referenced profiles), that are created at different points in time, use different update versions of the
908 referenced profiles.

909 For that reason, conformance of a *profile implementation* to a profile is defined only with regard to a
910 specific update version of that profile.

911 For example, if a particular profile P1 references version 1.0 of P2, and if P1 was written when version
912 1.0.1 of a referenced profile P2 was published, at that time P1 would effectively reference version 1.0.1 of
913 P2 and an implementation implementing P1 and P2 would have to implement version 1.0.1 of P2. When
914 at a later point in time version 1.0.2 of P2 is published, from that time on P1 would effectively reference

915 version 1.0.2 of P2, and an implementation implementing P1 and P2 would then have to implement
916 version 1.0.2 of P2. Thus the first implementation conforms to version 1.0.1 of P2, and the second
917 implementation conforms to version 1.0.2 of P2. The backward compatibility rules defined in 7.17 strive
918 for only permitting changes that do not invalidate the second implementation to version 1.0.1 of P2;
919 however — as detailed in 7.17 — it is possible that version 1.0.2 introduces incompatible changes as part
920 of error corrections.

921 5.2.5 Listener implementation conformance

922 A WBEM listener is conformant to [DSP1054](#) if it implements all requirements targeting WBEM listeners.
923 Note that profiles implementing [DSP1054](#) reference a particular version, and conformance is required
924 with respect to that version.

925 Further, a conformant WBEM listener shall implement the indication delivery related listener operations
926 defined in the operations specification. Note that this guide does not require that the same operations
927 specification is selected for the communication between the WBEM server and the WBEM listener, and
928 that between the WBEM client and the WBEM server.

929 5.2.6 Client implementation conformance

930 There is no explicit concept of client conformance. However, a client intending to successfully
931 interoperate with an implementation needs to adhere to the preconditions defined by the implemented
932 profiles and by other specifications referenced by them.

933 5.3 Instance conformance

934 An instance of a CIM class is conformant to a class adaptation if it satisfies all normative requirements of
935 the class adaptation, including those originating from base adaptations and from the schema.

936 NOTE The collection of normative requirements of a particular class adaptation in the context of an
937 implementation is a complex process that must consider all involved sources of requirements, such as
938 base adaptations, the CIM schema definition of the adapted class, and operations specifications; see
939 clause 9 for a detailed description of that process.

940 5.4 DMTF conformance requirements

941 The following rules apply to management profiles and management profile specifications owned by
942 DMTF:

- 943 • Management profiles owned by DMTF shall conform to this guide. The normative requirements
944 for profiles are detailed in clause 7 and in clause 8.
- 945 • Management profile specifications owned by DMTF shall conform to this guide. The normative
946 requirements for profile specifications are detailed in clause 10. In addition, the standard DMTF
947 specification format (see [DSP1000](#)) applies to DMTF-owned management profile specifications.

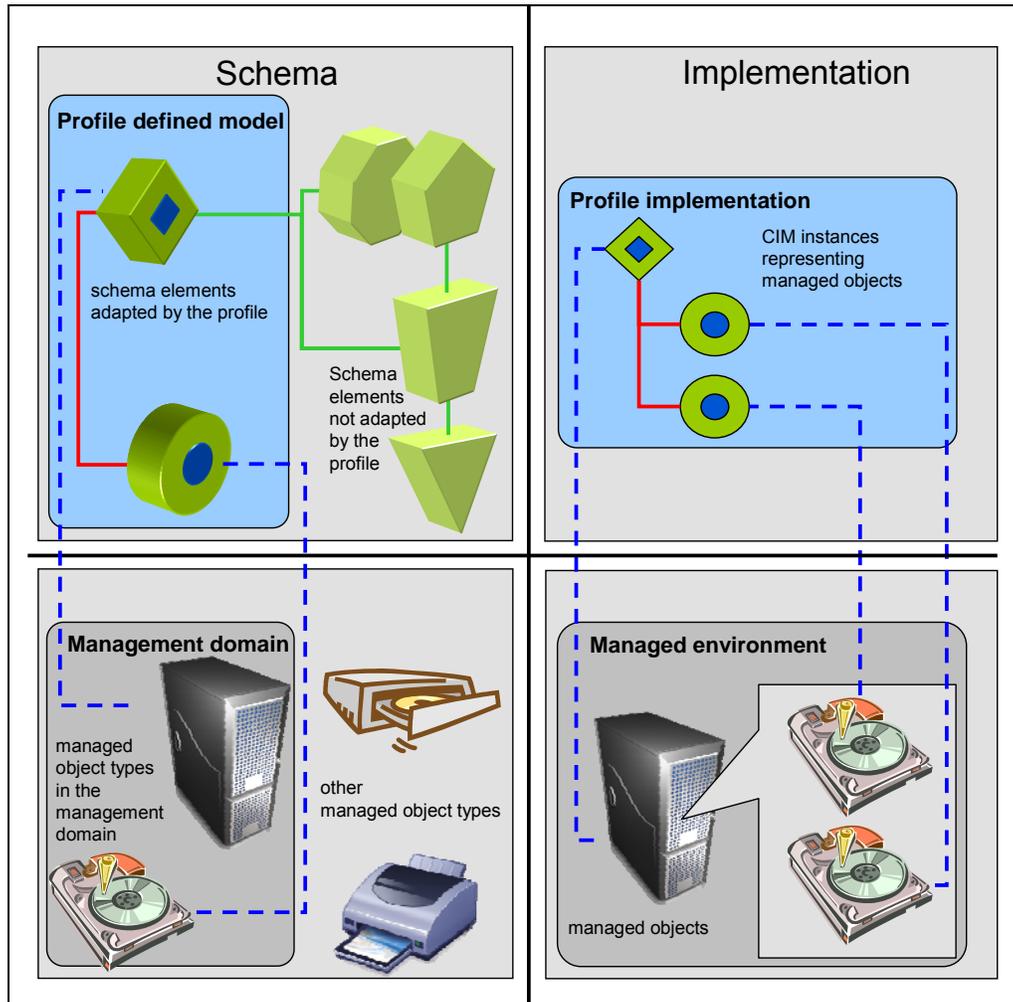
948 NOTE Other organizations may create their own guidelines for management profile specifications they publish. If
949 such profile specifications are to be conformant to this guide, these guidelines would have to incorporate,
950 reference, and optionally extend the requirements defined in this guide.

951 **6 Concepts**

952 This clause presents an introduction to general profile concepts established by this guide.

953 **6.1 Overview**

954 Figure 1 illustrates the profile defined model and its relationship to the management domain, as well as a
 955 corresponding profile implementation and its relationship to a managed environment.



956

957

Figure 1 – Profile and management domain

958 The left side of Figure 1 shows the profile defined model and its related management domain. Model and
 959 behavior are defined by selecting, specializing, and sometimes constraining elements from a schema
 960 and the set of operations for a particular purpose; in other words, the profile adapts elements from a schema
 961 for a particular purpose. The management domain is composed of managed object types. The classes
 962 adapted by a profile model aspects of these object types. A profile establishes a relationship between the
 963 model and the management domain. In addition, a profile defines use cases on the model that illustrate
 964 client visible behavior.

965 The right side of Figure 1 shows a profile implementation and a related managed environment. Each
 966 profile implementation provides access to a set of related CIM instances to a CIM client. These CIM

967 instances represent corresponding managed objects in the managed environment and conform to the
968 client visible management interfaces and behaviors defined in the profile. Note that the right side of
969 Figure 1 shows only one profile implementation and only one related managed environment; however, in
970 reality, potentially multiple profile implementations coexist, and each profile implementation typically
971 provides management capabilities for multiple related managed environments.

972 **6.2 Management domain**

973 A profile describes a *management domain* by defining the set of *managed object types* that compose the
974 management domain. In addition, the profile may define requirements and constraints on the components
975 of the management domain.

976 A management domain is an area of work or field of activity. Commonalities in a management domain are
977 a set of common management requirements, a common terminology, and related functionality. Examples
978 of management domains are a computer system, system virtualization, or file system.

979 Complex management domains may be subdivided into smaller management domains where each
980 subdomain narrows down the area of work or field of activity. For example, a subdivision of the file system
981 management domain might contain management subdomains such as file access, file locking, or file
982 representation.

983 If a management domain is subdivided into a set of subdomains, these may be likewise covered by
984 separate profiles. This guide defines several types of profile relationships enabling this decomposition.

985 **6.3 Managed object type**

986 A *managed object type* is a conceptual generalization or type of manageable things in a management
987 domain. Examples of managed object types composing the computer system management domain are
988 system, device, or service. Examples of managed object types composing the file system management
989 domain are file, directory, access list, or lock.

990 Relationships may exist between managed object types. For example, in the file system management
991 domain directories are composed of files, and files may be linked to each other.

992 **6.4 Managed environment and managed objects**

993 A *managed environment* is a concrete occurrence of a management domain and is composed of
994 *managed objects*. For example, a managed environment within the file system management domain is a
995 concrete Linux ext3 file system that resides on some storage media and is composed of objects such as
996 the file system itself, its files, directories, links, access lists, or quotas. For a particular type of managed
997 environment (for example, Linux ext3 file systems) specific management instrumentation (such as a set of
998 commands, or an API) may exist that allow the inspection and manipulation of managed objects in
999 respective managed environments. For example, instances of the Linux ext3 file system in a desktop
1000 installation may be inspected and manipulated through means of the Linux ext3 file system device
1001 drivers.

1002 Profiles are implemented for one or more types of managed environments. For example, for a profile
1003 addressing the file system management domain one implementation might cover the Linux ext3 file
1004 system and another separate implementation might cover the FAT file system and the Microsoft NTFS file
1005 system.

1006 **6.5 Profile definition**

1007 A profile defines a management interface for a management domain. The semantics of that management
1008 interface as well as the behavior of the managed objects in their managed environment are defined by a

1009 model that is composed of a set of class adaptations. Each class adaptation defines a set of requirements
1010 and constraints on the use of a class for a particular purpose. Class adaptations are defined in 7.13.

1011 **6.6 Relationships between profile definition and management domain**

1012 **6.6.1 Profile defined mappings**

1013 A profile defines the following mappings:

- 1014 • the mapping between managed object types composing a management domain and class
1015 adaptations modeling (aspects of) these managed object types.

1016 This kind of mapping is established in profiles by means of defining the management domain
1017 addressed by the profile, particularly the managed object types in that management domain,
1018 and by further stating for each adaptation which (aspect of a) managed object type is modeled
1019 by that adaptation; for details, see 7.11 and 7.13.2.2.

- 1020 • the mapping between managed objects composing a managed environment and adaptation
1021 instances representing aspects of these managed objects.

1022 This kind of mapping is established in profiles by means of instance requirements stated as part
1023 of the definition of adaptations; for details, see 7.13.3.4.

1024 These mappings have a substantial impact on the applicability of the profile and should be stated with
1025 great care, particularly when specifying the exact set or subset of managed objects that are to be
1026 represented by adaptation instances.

1027 **6.6.2 Existence and lifecycle of adaptation instances**

1028 In a managed environment the managed objects or relationships between them can potentially appear,
1029 disappear, or change at any time.

1030 For example, in a file system files are frequently created, deleted, or modified. Such changes may be
1031 effected by means of the management interface defined by the profile as described in 6.6.3, but in
1032 general the cause for such changes is outside the scope of the profile implementation.

1033 Recall that adaptation instances are instances of CIM classes that conform to the requirements of a
1034 particular adaptation; see 3.5.

1035 The *existence* of adaptation instances is a logical concept: A particular adaptation instance is defined to
1036 exist in a namespace of a particular WBEM server exactly as long as the managed object that is
1037 represented by that adaptation instance exists in the managed environment.

1038 It is emphasized that the existence of adaptation instances is a *logical concept*; particularly, the existence
1039 of an adaptation instance does not imply that the WBEM server in context of that the instance exists is
1040 active or that the managed environment containing the managed object representing the adaptation
1041 instance is accessible by the implementation within the WBEM server. Consequently, existing instances
1042 are not required to be visible to the clients all time.

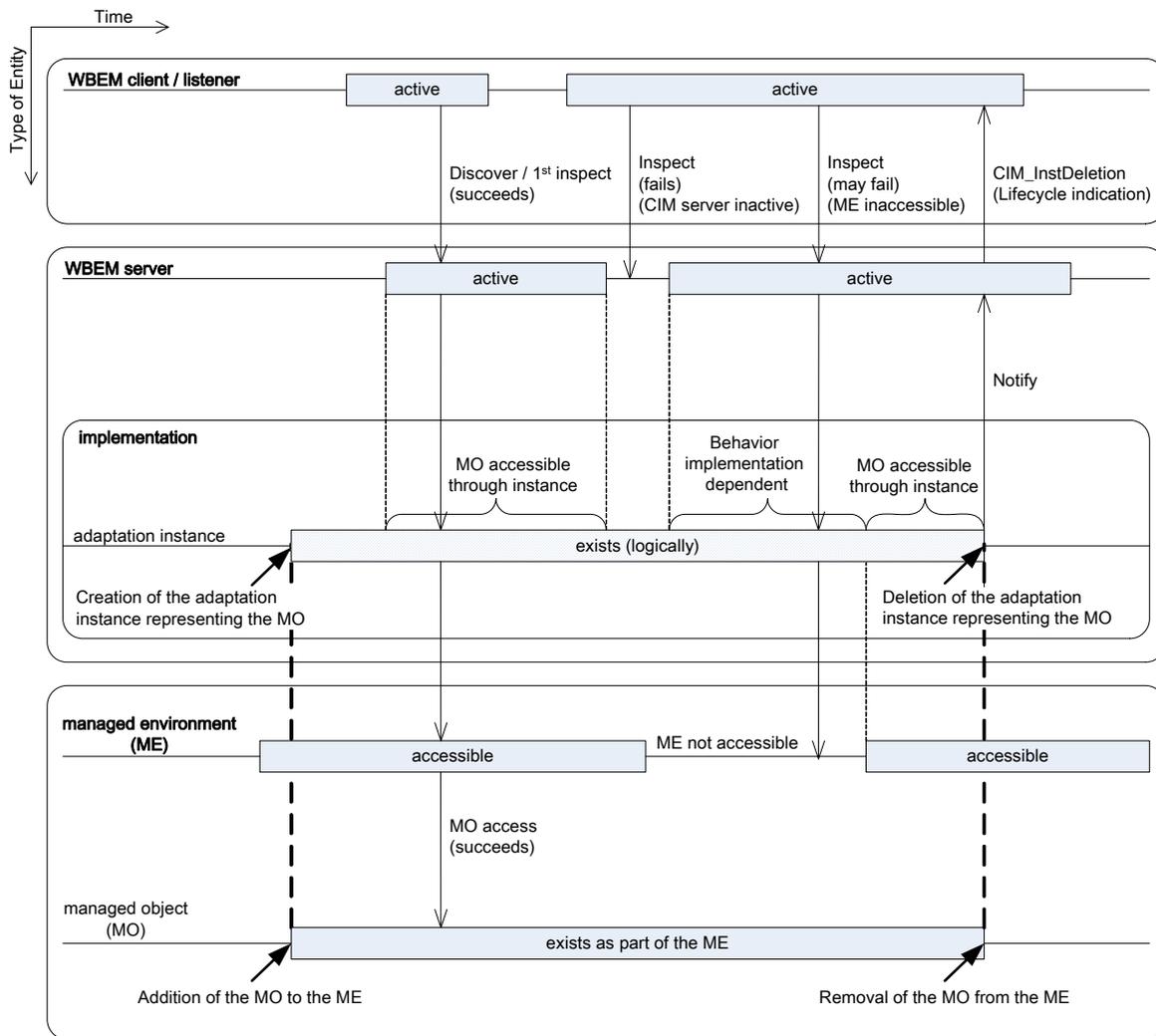
1043 NOTE One reason for defining the existence of adaptation instances as a logical concept independent from the
1044 activity state of the related WBEM server is avoiding the re-creation of adaptation instances when the
1045 WBEM server restarts that — among other consequences — would require the generation of respective
1046 lifecycle indications.

1047 The *creation* of an adaptation instance is defined to occur when the represented managed object is
1048 added to the managed environment. This can occur if either a pre-existing managed object is added to
1049 the managed environment, or if a managed object is created within the managed environment. The
1050 former is typical for tangible managed objects such as disk drives or fans, while the latter is typical for

1051 intangible managed objects such as files, log entries or virtual systems. The creation of an adaptation
 1052 instance is also the event that triggers the generation of a respective lifecycle indication; see 6.7.

1053 The *deletion* of an adaptation instance is defined to occur when the represented managed object is
 1054 removed from the managed environment. This occurs as a managed object such as a hardware
 1055 component is removed from the managed environment, but also if a managed object such as a database
 1056 record is deleted and thus no longer exists as part of the managed environment. The deletion of an
 1057 adaptation instance is also the event the triggers the generation of a respective lifecycle indication; see
 1058 6.7.

1059 These interrelationships are detailed in Figure 2.



1060

1061 **Figure 2 – Existence of adaptation instances**

1062 Figure 2 further details that the existence of an adaptation instance does not require that the WBEM
 1063 server in context of that the instance exists is active. This implies that an existing adaptation instance is
 1064 not all times accessible by clients. Various other reasons may also impede client access to adaptation
 1065 instances, such as for example the implementation not being able to access the managed object in the
 1066 managed environment.

1067 All the information exposed by an adaptation instance originates from the represented managed object.
1068 While a managed object is not accessible by the implementation, the representing adaptation instance(s)
1069 should not expose imprecise, outdated or otherwise unsynchronized information about the current state of
1070 the managed object. In case of doubt an implementation should raise an error or otherwise indicate that
1071 the represented managed object is not accessible, or that certain property values are not available; for
1072 example, the special value Null can be used to indicate the absence of a value.

1073 As a consequence, the only cause for a change in an adaptation instance is a respective change in the
1074 represented managed object. It is emphasized that this is also the case if the change was caused by the
1075 execution of a method on a CIM instance that represents that managed object; for details, see 6.6.3.

1076 NOTE There is much flexibility in defining managed object types. For example, it is possible for a profile to define
1077 managed object types such that configuration data is separated from functional data. That way an
1078 implementation could be realized such that configuration data is kept separately in a database and would
1079 be accessible while the database is accessible, whereas functional data would only be accessible if the
1080 functional part of a managed object is accessible; however, if a client requests a complete adaptation
1081 instance, the previously mentioned restrictions on exposing information apply also in this case with respect
1082 to the functional part.

1083 Adaptation instances are inherently volatile. A profile intending to enable a client to continuously monitor
1084 the state of a managed object existing in a managed environment has two possibilities:

- 1085 • require the client to continuously poll the information from the implementation. In this situation
1086 the client could for example repeatedly invoke the `GetInstance()` operation of the adaptation
1087 instance representing the specific aspect being monitored. In a more comfortable case the
1088 profile could adapt a class providing a specific method designed to return information about any
1089 changes since the last poll.
- 1090 • model indications as described in 6.7.

1091 6.6.3 Model effected control of managed objects in a managed environment

1092 CIM initiated modifications on the model are only actable if the represented managed environment admits
1093 such modifications. Profiles may define CIM-based control of managed objects in a managed
1094 environment by assigning management domain specific semantics to methods or operations defined by
1095 the model; for details, see 7.13.3.2 or 7.13.3.3. If such a method or operation is invoked, the
1096 implementation issues requests to the affected managed object in the managed environment in order to
1097 perform the profile defined semantics of the method or operation. The mechanisms applied for this
1098 forwarding are implementation dependent. Depending on conditions that prevail in the managed
1099 environment the request may or may not succeed.

1100 Adaptation instances represent aspects of managed objects in the managed environment. This includes
1101 reflecting the state of the managed object after completing changes effected through the model, such as
1102 the invocation of methods or operations. However, after, or coincident with, such a change, other actions
1103 not effected through the model can also affect the state and are represented by the adaptation instance.
1104 This situation drives the need for profiles to define the means that indicate completion for model effected
1105 changes.

1106 6.7 Events and indications

1107 An event is an observable occurrence of a phenomenon of interest. Profiles specify events as part of
1108 indications. For details, see [DSP1054](#).

1109 Indications model notifications about events. Notifications about events that are related to CIM instances
1110 representing particular managed objects are modeled as *lifecycle indications*; notifications about other
1111 kinds of events are modeled through *alert indications*; for details, see [DSP1054](#).

1112 **7 Profile definitions**

1113 **7.1 General**

1114 Clause 7 defines the requirements for definitions in profiles. It focuses on the profile content, regardless
1115 of the format that is chosen to specify the profile. Clause 8 defines general conventions and guidelines
1116 that apply for all kinds of profiles. Clause 10 defines the requirements for profile specification documents,
1117 focusing on formal text document aspects.

1118 **7.2 Profile elements**

1119 **7.2.1 General**

1120 Profile elements are the (kinds of) formal elements that this guide establishes to be specified by profiles.

1121 This guide defines following profile elements for the use in profiles:

- 1122 • adaptations (see 7.13)
- 1123 • features (see 7.15)
- 1124 • profile references (see 7.9.1)
- 1125 • registry references (see 7.12)
- 1126 • property requirements (see 7.13.2.8)
- 1127 • method requirements (see 7.13.3.2)
- 1128 • operation requirements (see 7.13.3.3)
- 1129 • input value requirements (see 7.13.2.11)
- 1130 • error reporting requirements (see 7.13.3.3.6)
- 1131 • state descriptions (see 7.16.2)
- 1132 • use cases (see 7.16)

1133 In many cases the requirements defined in a profile for a profile element are based on, refer to, extend or
1134 further constrain an entity that is defined outside of the profile. For example, an adaptation defined in a
1135 profile adapts a class defined in a schema for a particular purpose; or a registry reference refers to a
1136 registry of certain things such as messages or metrics, which are applied or used other definitions within
1137 the profile.

1138 **7.2.2 Named profile elements**

1139 The following profile elements are defined as named profile elements: adaptations, features, profile
1140 references, registry references, state descriptions and use cases.

1141 A named profile element shall be assigned a name that uniquely identifies the named profile element
1142 within the scope of the profile defining the named profile element. Uniqueness is only required separately
1143 for each kind of named profile element; consequently, it is possible that within one profile for example a
1144 feature has the same name as an adaptation.

1145 The name shall conform to the format defined for the ABNF rule IDENTIFIER in Annex A of [DSP0004](#).

1146 The name should be composed of a concatenated sequence of words, with each word starting with a
1147 capital letter.

1148 NOTE This notation is occasionally termed camel-case notation (starting with a capital letter).

1149 Profile element names are part of the normative definitions of a profile; the rules for backward
1150 compatibility and deprecation as defined in 7.17 and 7.19 apply.

1151 For example, StateManagement might name a feature that defines a model for the management of the
1152 state of managed objects. If version 1.0 had introduced that feature, subsequent minor versions would be
1153 required to retain the StateManagement feature under that name, and with identical or compatibly
1154 extended semantics. Subsequent minor versions could deprecate the feature, but only a new major
1155 version would be allowed to remove the feature.

1156 Examples of adaptation names are Fan for an adaptation of the CIM_Fan class, or FanOfSystem for an
1157 adaptation of the CIM_SystemDevice association modeling the relationship between systems and fans.

1158 Examples of profile reference names are DiskSpeedSensors and DiskTemperatorSensors for *two* profile
1159 references defined by an Example Disk profile referencing an Example Sensors profile for the two
1160 purposes: The modeling of disk speed sensors and disk temperature sensors.

1161 **7.3 Usage of requirement levels**

1162 **7.3.1 General**

1163 This subclause defines the usage of requirement levels by profiles. Requirement levels designate the
1164 requirement for implementing profile elements.

1165 Occasionally individual requirement levels may be defined for specific purposes, such as the
1166 presentation, initialization or modification of adaptation instances.

1167 The following requirement levels are defined:

- 1168 • Mandatory, as defined in 3.48
- 1169 • Optional, as defined in 3.58
- 1170 • Conditional, as defined in 3.19
- 1171 • Conditional exclusive, as defined in 3.20
- 1172 • Prohibited, as defined in 3.72

1173 It is emphasized that dependencies on other profile elements defined in the same or in other profiles, as
1174 well as dependencies on referenced definitions for example from referenced schemas or registries, may
1175 impose additional implementation requirements. The determination of implementation requirements and
1176 the effects of requirement levels with respect to the implementation requirements of profile elements are
1177 described in clause 9.

1178 NOTE Requirement levels are formally defined only for the designation of profile elements (see 7.2). However,
1179 profiles may state other provisions such as instance requirements or indication-generation requirements
1180 using normative language (primarily verbal phrases such as "shall", "may", "should", etc.).

1181 **7.3.2 Usage of the "mandatory" requirement level**

1182 A subject profile should designate a profile element as mandatory if it unconditionally requires the
1183 implementation of the designated profile element. Clients can rely on mandatory profile elements being
1184 implemented once they have determined that the subject profile is implemented.

1185 **7.3.3 Usage of the "optional" requirement level**

1186 A subject profile should designate a profile element as optional if it leaves the decision to implement the
1187 profile element to the implementation. In other words, the implementation of an optional profile element is
1188 considered auxiliary or complementary from the perspective of the subject profile.

1189 A CIM based discovery mechanism (see 7.5) should be defined that enables clients — after having
1190 determined that the subject profile is implemented — to determine whether the optional profile element is
1191 implemented. A CIM based discovery mechanism (see 7.5) shall be defined if other profile elements are
1192 defined as conditional or conditional exclusive on the optional profile element.

1193 A profile that intends to define multiple optional profile elements that are useful to clients only as a group
1194 should define an optional feature (see 7.15) and define the elements as conditional on the implementation
1195 of that optional feature.

1196 **7.3.4 Usage of the "conditional" requirement level**

1197 A subject profile should designate a profile element as conditional if it requires the implementation of the
1198 designated profile element only under certain conditions, and otherwise leaves the decision to implement
1199 the designated profile element to the implementation.

1200 For any profile element designated as conditional, the condition shall be defined using one of the
1201 mechanisms defined in 7.4.

1202 A CIM based discovery mechanism (see 7.5) shall be defined that enables clients — after having
1203 determined that the subject profile is implemented — to determine whether the conditional profile element
1204 is available. The discovery mechanism may be defined indirectly, such that the discovery mechanism for
1205 one conditional profile element by means of conditional dependencies is delegated to that of another
1206 profile element; particularly, this is the case with feature implementation conditions (see 7.4.3) and
1207 feature discovery (see 7.15.6).

1208 **7.3.5 Usage of the "conditional exclusive" requirement level**

1209 A subject profile should designate a profile element as conditional exclusive if it requires the
1210 implementation of the designated profile element only under certain conditions, and otherwise prohibits
1211 the implementation of the designated profile element.

1212 NOTE This is different from conditional because a conditional profile element may be implemented even if the
1213 condition is not true.

1214 For any profile element designated as conditional exclusive, the condition shall be defined using one of
1215 the mechanisms defined in 7.4.

1216 A CIM based discovery mechanism (see 7.5) shall be defined that enables clients — after having
1217 determined that the subject profile is implemented — to determine whether the conditional exclusive
1218 profile element is available. The discovery mechanism may be defined indirectly, such that the discovery
1219 mechanism for one conditional exclusive profile element by means of conditional dependencies is
1220 delegated to that of another profile element; particularly, this is the case with feature implementation
1221 conditions (see 7.4.3) and feature discovery (see 7.15.6).

1222 **7.3.6 Usage of the "prohibited" requirement level**

1223 A subject profile should designate a profile element as prohibited if it prohibits the implementation of the
1224 designated profile element. Prohibiting the implementation of certain profile elements might be necessary
1225 for example to suppress specific behaviors under certain conditions, or in cases where from a selection of
1226 possible variants only one is to be implemented.

1227 **7.4 Definition of conditions**

1228 This subclause defines mechanisms for the definition of conditions. A condition determines whether a
1229 conditional or conditional exclusive profile element must be implemented.

1230 7.4.1 General

1231 As defined in 7.3.4, profiles shall define a condition for any conditional or conditional exclusive elements.

1232 Profiles shall apply only the mechanisms defined in 7.4 defining such conditions. Subclauses 7.4.2 to
1233 7.4.7 define basic types of conditions. Complex conditions may be expressed as combinations of basic
1234 conditions using the Boolean operators AND, OR, NOT, XOR and IMPLIES.

1235 Some of these mechanisms are deprecated. New profiles and revisions of existing profiles should not use
1236 such deprecated mechanisms.

1237 NOTE 1 Conditions control conditional implementation requirements. Conditions are resolved at implementation
1238 time and are complied with by implementers as they implement conditional and conditional exclusive
1239 elements in the case where the condition is true. Conditions themselves are not generally directly
1240 observable by clients; however, the effect of implementing conditional elements is observable by clients.
1241 Discovery mechanisms are CIM based mechanisms that are specifically designed to provide for the run
1242 time discovery of optional, conditional or conditional exclusive profile elements; for details, see 7.5.

1243 NOTE 2 Conditions are not to be confused with implementation decisions made by profile implementers. A
1244 condition does not need to be based on such decisions. For example, a condition may be tied to
1245 circumstances in the type of managed environment addressed by an implementation, not leaving any room
1246 for a decision to be made.

1247 7.4.2 Profile implementation condition

1248 A profile may specify a condition based on whether or not a referenced profile is implemented. This kind
1249 of condition is called a *profile implementation condition*.

1250 A profile implementation conditional is True if the referenced profile is implemented; otherwise, a profile
1251 implementation conditional is False.

1252 For example, an Example Fan profile might model fan management. This Example Fan profile might
1253 require that the implementation of the *GetAssociatedInstancesWithPath()* operation for its adaptation of
1254 the CIM_Fan class for traversing to CIM_Sensor instances representing attached fan speed sensors is
1255 conditional on the implementation of an Example Sensors profile for those speed sensors. In this
1256 example, an implementation decision is made at the level of implementing the Example Sensors profile.
1257 The profile implementation conditional defined in the Example Fan profile determines the consequences
1258 of such profile implementation for the elements adapted in the Example Fan profile.

1259 NOTE There is no restriction that the referenced profile needs to be implemented in the same WBEM server as
1260 the referencing profile.

1261 NOTE Implementing a referenced profile for the purpose of conforming to a profile implementation condition in a
1262 referencing profile is a design-time decision and is not to be confused with detecting profile
1263 implementations at run-time. The latter is defined in [DSP1033](#).

1264 7.4.3 Feature implementation condition

1265 A profile may specify a condition based on the implementation of a feature (see 7.15). This kind of
1266 condition is called a *feature implementation condition*.

1267 A feature implementation condition is True if the feature is implemented as part of a profile
1268 implementation, without taking into account the granularity level of the feature; otherwise, a feature
1269 implementation condition is False. For details about feature granularity levels, see 7.15.5.

1270 For example, an Example Fan profile might model fan management. This Example Fan profile might
1271 define a "FanSpeedSensor" feature. Some elements adapted by the Example Fan profile might be
1272 defined as conditional on the implementation of the feature. Likewise, an Example Sensors profile
1273 modeling the use of sensors might be referenced by the Example Fan profile, on the condition that the
1274 FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented. In this example, an implementation decision is made at the
1275 level of implementing the feature. The feature implementation conditions defined in the Example Fan

1276 profile determine the consequences of implementing the feature, in this case the implementation of the
 1277 elements adapted by the Example Fan profile and related to fan speed sensing, and implementation of
 1278 the Example Sensors profile in the context of fan speed sensors.

1279 NOTE The way this example defines an implementation option in a profile is different from how the example
 1280 described in 7.4.2 defines it; in this case, there is no implementation difference between using a profile
 1281 implementation condition or a feature implementation condition. However, the use of a feature
 1282 implementation condition is preferred because it makes explicit a requirement that a set of related
 1283 elements be implemented as a unit. Additionally, the profile is required to provide a means of detecting
 1284 that a feature has been implemented; for details, see 7.15.6. This generally reduces the number of
 1285 variations in implementations and therefore the complexity of clients that must accommodate those
 1286 variations.

1287 7.4.4 Class adaptation implementation condition

1288 A profile may specify a condition based on the implementation of a non-mandatory class adaptation (see
 1289 7.13). This kind of condition is called a *class adaptation implementation condition*.

1290 NOTE The decision to implement an optional class adaptation — or a conditional class adaptation in the case
 1291 where the condition is not true — is made by an implementer; consequently, requirements related to other
 1292 elements specified by a profile can be conditioned on the implementation of the class adaptation. A class
 1293 adaptation implementation condition is not necessarily directly observable by a client; for example,
 1294 consider the case where no instances of the class adaptation exist.

1295 A class adaptation implementation condition is True if the class adaptation is implemented; otherwise, a
 1296 class adaptation implementation condition is False.

1297 For example, the implementation of fan redundancy might be defined in an Example Fan profile such that
 1298 the adaptation of the CIM_RedundancyGroup class is defined as optional, and the definitions of any other
 1299 profile elements related to fan redundancy would then be defined as conditional on the implementation of
 1300 the adaptation of the CIM_RedundancyGroup class.

1301 NOTE In the example, the requirements for some related profile elements are conditioned on the implementation
 1302 of a class adaptation, in effect causing the related profile elements to be implemented if the decision to
 1303 implement the class adaptation is made initially; in this situation the definition of a feature along with
 1304 respective feature implementation conditions on the class adaptation and the related profile elements is
 1305 considered a better choice.

1306 DEPRECATED

1307 7.4.5 Instance existence condition

1308 Instance existence conditions are deprecated in favor of the discovery through identified or related
 1309 adaptation instances (see 7.5.2 and 7.5.3); for the rationale, see the "Deprecation notice" below.

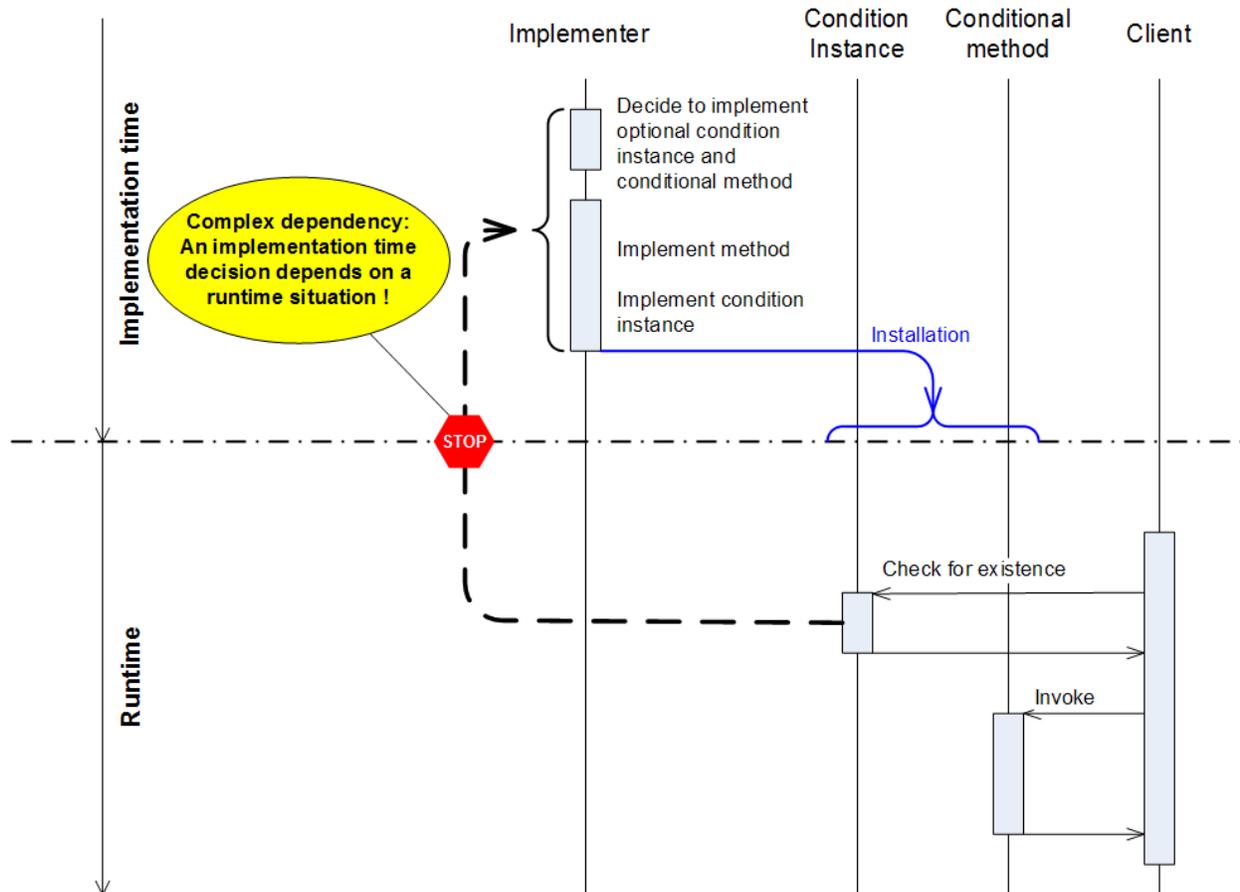
1310 A profile may specify a condition based on the existence of a particular CIM instance. This kind of
 1311 condition is called an *instance existence condition*.

1312 An instance existence condition is True if the CIM instance as defined by the profile exists; otherwise, the
 1313 instance existence condition is False. The profile shall define a discovery mechanism for the CIM
 1314 instance; for details, see 7.5.

1315 For example, a profile that optionally adapts a specialization of the CIM_Service class that has several
 1316 domain specific service methods might state that the CIM_HostedService association that models the
 1317 relationship between the service and the system hosting the service shall only be implemented if the
 1318 CIM_Service instance exists.

1319 NOTE The concept of instance existence conditions is problematic because it implies that the implementation of
 1320 conditional profile elements (such as adaptations) depends on the existence of CIM instances. Thus a
 1321 design time decision (such as implementing an adaptation) depends on a situation that is the result of an

1322 implementation and is observable at runtime only (such as the existence of a CIM instance); consequently,
 1323 as detailed in Figure 3, the determination of the condition requires the implementer to abstractly anticipate
 1324 the runtime situation. In other words, the implementer who needs to make a design time decision (for
 1325 example, implement the adaptation) would have to figure out potential runtime situations (for example, the
 1326 existence of CIM instances) that are only the result of the implementation; this is considered a
 1327 cumbersome and potentially error prone exercise.



1328
 1329 **Figure 3 – Complexity when an implementation decision depends on a runtime element**

1330 **Deprecation notice:** Instance existence conditions are an unnecessary complication and indirection of
 1331 the decision process for implementing a conditional or conditional exclusive element. New profiles and
 1332 revisions of existing profiles should use feature implementation conditions rather than instance existence
 1333 conditions.

1334 **NOTE** It is emphasized that the deprecation of instance existence conditions does not prohibit profiles from
 1335 specifying the existence of instances as a means for clients to detect the result of design-time decisions.
 1336 On the contrary, this guide requires profiles to define discovery mechanisms for the run time discovery of
 1337 conditional or conditional exclusive profile elements (see 7.5). This significantly differs from instance
 1338 existence conditions insofar as now the design-time decision (for example, the implementation of an
 1339 optional feature) is made first, and as a consequence the implementation is required to provide discovery
 1340 elements (such as a specific CIM instance) that indicate the implementation of the conditional or
 1341 conditional exclusive element to clients.

1342 **DEPRECATED**

1343

1344 **DEPRECATED**

1345 **7.4.6 Property value condition**

1346 Property value conditions are deprecated in favor of discovery through specific property values (see
1347 7.5.4); for the rationale, see the "Deprecation notice" below.

1348 A profile may specify a condition based on the value of a property of a particular CIM instance. This kind
1349 of condition is called a *property value* condition.

1350 A property value condition is True if the CIM instance exists and the values of one or more properties in
1351 the instance match a pattern defined by the profile; otherwise, the property value condition is False.

1352 For example, a profile that adapts a specialization of the CIM_Service class that defines several methods
1353 might in addition adapt a specialization of the CIM_Capabilities class that defines an array property and a
1354 corresponding value set, where each element of the value set designates one of the methods from the
1355 CIM_Service class. Implementation of a particular method would be required if the corresponding value is
1356 set as an element of the array property.

1357 **NOTE** The concept of property value conditions is problematic because it implies that the implementation of
1358 conditional elements (such as adaptations) depends on values of properties in CIM instances. Thus a
1359 design-time decision (such as implementing a class adaptation) depends on a situation that is the result of
1360 an implementation and is observable at runtime only (such as a certain value of a property in a CIM
1361 instance); consequently, similar to the situation detailed in Figure 3, the determination of the condition
1362 requires the implementer to abstractly anticipate the runtime situation. In other words, the implementer
1363 who needs to make the design-time decision (for example, implement the adaptation) would have to figure
1364 out potential runtime situations (for example, property values in CIM instances) that are only the result of
1365 an implementation; this is considered a cumbersome and potentially error-prone exercise.

1366 **Deprecation notice:** Property value conditions are an unnecessary complication and indirection of the
1367 decision process for implementing a conditional or conditional exclusive element. New profiles and
1368 revisions of existing profiles should use feature implementation conditions rather than property value
1369 conditions.

1370 **NOTE** It is emphasized that the deprecation of property value conditions does not prohibit profiles from specifying
1371 property values as a means for clients to detect the result of design time decisions. On the contrary, this
1372 guide requires profiles to define discovery mechanisms for the run time discovery of conditional or
1373 conditional exclusive profile elements (see 7.5). This significantly differs from property value conditions
1374 insofar as now the design time decision (for example, the implementation of an optional class adaptation)
1375 is made first, and as a consequence the implementation is required to provide discovery elements (such
1376 as a specific property value in a CIM instance) that enable clients to detect the implementation of the
1377 conditional or conditional exclusive element.

1378 **DEPRECATED**

1379 **7.4.7 Managed environment condition**

1380 A profile may specify a condition based on circumstances in the managed environment. This kind of
1381 condition is called a *managed environment condition*.

1382 Managed environment conditions are specified in profiles using plain text that refers to the managed
1383 environment and its managed object types.

1384 A managed environment condition is True if the conditions specified in the text are True for the particular
1385 type of managed environment for which the profile is implemented; otherwise, the managed environment
1386 condition is False.

1387 For example, a profile addressing the management domain of storage host bus adapters might adapt the
1388 CIM_FCPort class modeling fiber channel host SCSI initiator ports. The profile might state that the

1389 implementation of its adaptations of the CIM_AlarmDevice class and of the CIM_AssociatedAlarm
1390 association are conditional on the condition that the type of managed environment for which the profile is
1391 implemented provides a client callable interface to blink an LED for those fiber channel ports that are
1392 represented by instances of the CIM_FCPort class.

1393 NOTE 1 Managed environment conditions allow the formulation of conditions in profiles such that an
1394 implementation of the profile is required to implement the conditional element only if respective means are
1395 available to the implementation in the particular type of managed environment. In the example above, the
1396 implementation of the CIM_AlarmDevice class makes sense only if the implementation has the means to
1397 blink the LEDs.

1398 NOTE 2 Of course managed environment conditions are only testable using white box testing where the test code
1399 also has access to specific means to test the managed environment condition. Ideally these means would
1400 be different from those used by a profile implementation.

1401 **7.5 Discovery mechanisms**

1402 **7.5.1 General**

1403 Discovery mechanisms enable clients to discover whether optional, conditional or conditional exclusive
1404 profile elements are implemented, or are available in context of other profile elements. A discovery
1405 mechanism is a CIM based mechanism that yields a Boolean result.

1406 It is highly recommended that profiles define discovery mechanisms for optional (see 7.3.3), conditional
1407 (see 7.3.4) or conditional exclusive (see 7.3.5) profile elements.

1408 **7.5.2 Discovery through an identified adaptation instance**

1409 For this discovery mechanism the subject profile needs to define an identification for a particular
1410 adaptation instance, for example by requiring specific property values. If an instance matching the profile
1411 defined identification exists, the discovery mechanism yields True, otherwise False.

1412 An example is an instance of an adaptation of the CIM_RegisteredProfile class that represents the
1413 registration of a subject profile (for details on profile registration, see [DSP1033](#)). Clients can discover that
1414 instance by filtering existing instances for values of the identification properties defined by the subject
1415 profile, such as the RegisteredName, RegisteredOrganization and RegisteredVersion properties.

1416 **7.5.3 Discovery through a related adaptation instance**

1417 For this discovery mechanism the subject profile needs to define an association path from a subject
1418 adaptation instance (in context of which the discoverable implementation variant is available) to a related
1419 adaptation instance. If the related instance is reachable by traversing the defined association path from
1420 the subject adaptation instance, the discovery mechanism yields True, otherwise False. Note that the
1421 discoverable implementation variant does not necessarily have to be available in direct context of the
1422 subject adaptation instance itself, but instead may apply to elements that are related to the subject
1423 adaptation instance.

1424 For example, an Example Port profile could define a PortController adaptation of the CIM_PortController
1425 class modeling port controllers, a PortErrorLED adaptation of the CIM_AlarmDevice class modeling a
1426 blinkable LED that is capable of signaling an error or a port controller, and an AssociatedLED adaptation
1427 of the CIM_AssociatedAlarm association modeling the relationship between a port controller and its error
1428 indication LED. Clients can discover whether optional error indication LEDs are installed for a particular
1429 port controller by resolving the CIM_AssociatedAlarm association, starting from the PortController
1430 instance representing that port controller, for CIM_AlarmDevice instances; if such an instance exists, a
1431 client can rely on that optional error indicator LEDs are installed for the port controller.

1432 7.5.4 Implementation discovery through specific property values

1433 This discovery mechanism is applicable for a subject instance itself, or as extension to a discovery
 1434 mechanisms for an identified instance or a related instance. For such instances, the profile defines
 1435 specific property values; only if the instance exists and exhibits these specific property values, the
 1436 discovery mechanism yields True, otherwise it yields False.

1437 For example, an Example Fan profile might define a FanCapabilities adaptation of the
 1438 CIM_EnabledLogicalElementCapabilities class, and associate that with the Fan adaptation by means of
 1439 an adaptation of the CIM_ElementCapabilities association. The Example Fan profile might further define
 1440 that the value of the ElementNameEditSupported property shall have the value True if the modification of
 1441 the ElementName property in the related Fan instance is implemented. Thus a client can - by inspecting
 1442 the value of the ElementNameEditSupported property in a FanCapabilities instance associated with a Fan
 1443 instance – discover that the modification of the ElementName property in the Fan instance is
 1444 implemented.

1445 7.6 Definition of the profile identification

1446 This subclause defines the elements of a profile identification.

1447 7.6.1 General

1448 A profile shall uniquely identify itself through a registered profile name (see 7.6.2), version (see 7.6.3),
 1449 and organization (see 7.6.4).

1450 NOTE Profile identification identifies a specific version of a profile, not that of a profile implementation. Within one
 1451 WBEM server there may be multiple profile implementations of the same profile version.

1452 7.6.2 Registered profile name

1453 The registered profile name should provide end-user recognition and should not include CIM class
 1454 names.

1455 The registered profile name shall be unique within the defining organization.

1456 The registered profile name shall not be changed in any future version of the profile.

1457 The registered profile name shall not include the word "profile". However, in normal profile text references
 1458 to other profiles should append the word "profile" to the registered profile name. For example, a profile
 1459 referencing another profile whose value of the registered profile name attribute is "System Virtualization"
 1460 would use text such as "If the System Virtualization profile (see DSP1042) is implemented, then ...".

1461 NOTE 1 This rule is for references to profiles in normal profile text. It is to be distinguished from the rules for
 1462 referencing *specification documents* (including profile specification documents), as established by the
 1463 "[Document conventions](#)" of this guide. References to specification documents typically only appear in the
 1464 "Normative references" and in the "Bibliography" clauses of a profile. For example, when referring to the
 1465 profile specification document that contains the definition of version 1.0 of the System Virtualization profile
 1466 and that is titled "System Virtualization Profile", that profile specification document would have to be
 1467 referenced as DMTF DSP1042, *System Virtualization Profile 1.0* in the "Normative references" clause.
 1468 It is important to realize that the definition of a profile is different from a document that contains that
 1469 definition. For example, the definition of the System Virtualization profile could be contained in the
 1470 document with the number DMTF DSP1042 in the form of a profile specification. Likewise, it could be
 1471 contained in the document with the number DMTF DSP6042 in the form of a machine readable profile.

1472 NOTE 2 A helpful convention applied by many profile specification documents (and by this guide) when referring to
 1473 a profile in normal text is appending a phrase such as "(see <docnum>)" after a first reference to a profile
 1474 within a subclause, where <docnum> is an internal hyperlink. The hyperlink is named as the document
 1475 number of the referenced document, and links to the entry in the "Normative references" clause that refers
 1476 to the document that contains the definition of the referenced profile.

1477 7.6.3 Registered profile version

1478 The registered profile version shall be the full version of the subject profile. The version shall be defined
1479 following the rules for versioning DMTF specifications defined in [DSP4004](#).

1480 DMTF Standard versions of a profile shall specify the major version identifier, the minor version identifier
1481 and the update identifier for the registered profile version. Work-in-progress versions of a profile should in
1482 addition specify the draft level in order to enable the distinction of implementation of work-in-progress
1483 versions from DMTF Standard versions.

1484 7.6.4 Registered organization name

1485 The registered organization name shall be the name of the organization that is publishing the profile. For
1486 profiles that are published by DMTF, the registered organization name shall be "DMTF".

1487 7.6.5 Organizational contact

1488 A profile shall identify the organizational unit that is the contact for the profile. For profiles owned by
1489 DMTF, details are defined in [DSP4004](#).

1490 7.7 Definition of schema references

1491 This subclause defines the elements of a reference to a schema.

1492 7.7.1 General

1493 A profile shall reference each schema that defines classes adapted by the profile. Each schema
1494 reference shall state the schema name (see 7.7.3), the schema version (see 7.7.2), and the schema
1495 organization (see 7.7.4), unless default values apply.

1496 7.7.2 Schema version

1497 The schema version shall be stated with the major version identifier, the minor version identifier and, if
1498 needed, the update identifier. The schema version should refer to the earliest version of the schema that
1499 meets the requirements of the profile. Regardless of whether or not an update identifier is stated, the
1500 latest published update version with the stated major and minor version identifier is referenced, as
1501 defined in [DSP4004](#); in other words, while an update identifier identifies the minimally required update
1502 version, it shall be interpreted as referring to the latest update version published after the minimally
1503 required update version.

1504 7.7.3 Schema name

1505 The schema name shall refer to the schema by the name that the owning organization assigned to the
1506 schema. The specification of this attribute is optional only in the case where only one schema is
1507 referenced; if not specified in this case, the default schema name is "CIM".

1508 7.7.4 Schema organization

1509 The schema organization shall refer to the organization that owns the schema. The specification of this
1510 attribute is optional only in the case where only one schema organization is referenced; if not specified in
1511 this case, the default schema organization is "DMTF".

1512 7.7.5 Schema experimental flag

1513 Profiles may reference schemas that are designated as experimental by the organization that defines the
1514 schema. A reference to an experimental schema shall be marked as experimental.

1515 NOTE See 7.18 for rules for the specification of experimental content.

1516 **7.8 Definition of profile categories**

1517 **7.8.1 General**

1518 As pointed out in 6.2, complex management domains typically can be subdivided into smaller
1519 management domains where each subdomain narrows down the area of work or field of activity. In order
1520 to reflect this subdivision, two categories of profiles are defined: Autonomous profiles and component
1521 profiles.

1522 **7.8.2 Autonomous profiles**

1523 An autonomous profile defines a management interface for an autonomous and self-contained
1524 management domain. An autonomous profile may be defined without relationships to other profiles
1525 (standalone) or may be defined with relationships to other profiles that as a set define a management
1526 interface for a complete management domain.

1527 **7.8.3 Component profiles**

1528 A component profile defines a management interface of a subset or special aspect of a management
1529 domain. In most cases it is possible and desirable to specify a component profile independent of its use in
1530 the context of a particular referencing profile, enabling reuse of the component profile in the context of
1531 many possible referencing profiles.

1532 For example, an autonomous profile addressing the management domain of systems might reference a
1533 component profile for the purpose of addressing the management domain of network ports in systems.
1534 The same component profile might be referenced by another autonomous profile that addresses the
1535 management domain of network switches, in this case for the purpose of addressing the management
1536 domain of switch ports.

1537 **7.9 Definition of profile relationships**

1538 **7.9.1 Definition of profile references**

1539 **7.9.1.1 General**

1540 A profile reference is a named profile element within the referencing profile; the rules defined in 7.2.2
1541 apply. A profile reference references a profile by stating the type of the profile reference (see 7.9.1.2), and
1542 by identifying the minimally required version of the referenced profile (see 7.9.1.3). In addition, the use of
1543 the referenced profile in the context of the referencing profile should be described.

1544 A profile reference establishes either profile derivation or a profile usage.

1545 Profile derivation establishes another profile as a base profile of the subject profile; profile derivation is
1546 detailed in 7.9.2.

1547 A profile usage establishes a use of the referenced profile within the context of the referencing profile. It is
1548 possible that a subject profile defines multiple usages of a particular profile; in this case the subject profile
1549 references that profile multiple times, each time for a separate use. For example, an Example Fan profile
1550 addressing the management domain of fans in systems could reference an Example Sensors profile for
1551 the representation of sensors monitoring fan speed and for temperature sensors monitoring the
1552 temperature of cooled elements.

1553 Scoping is a refinement of a profile usage that in addition requires the definition of specific adaptations
1554 and dependencies between them in the referencing profile as well as in the referenced profile; for details,
1555 see 7.9.3.

1556 A profile shall not reference its previous versions.

1557 The definition of cyclic profile references is allowed for profile usages; however, it is prohibited for profile
1558 derivation. Additional restrictions apply in context of cyclic references between profiles. For example, it is
1559 not possible to define cyclic relationships between adaptations; for details, see 7.13.2.1.

1560 An example of cyclic references between profiles is a profile A that defines a mandatory reference to a
1561 profile B, and that profile B defines a mandatory reference back to profile A. Another example is an
1562 autonomous profile that defines a profile reference to each of its component profiles, and each
1563 component profile refers back to the autonomous profile.

1564 NOTE Generally, component profiles do not reference their scoping profile.

1565 7.9.1.2 Types of profile references

1566 The types of profile references are defined as follows:

- 1567 • **Derivation**

1568 A derivation profile reference indicates that the definitions of the referenced profile are the base
1569 for the referencing profile, as detailed in 7.9.2. In this case, the referenced profile is called a
1570 base profile, and the referencing profile is termed a derived profile. From a client point of view, a
1571 derived profile is substitutable for a base profile. As required in 7.9.2, at most one direct base
1572 profile shall be established per subject profile.

1573 All subsequent types of profile references establish profile usages:

- 1574 • **Mandatory**

1575 A mandatory profile usage indicates that the definitions of the referenced profile apply in the
1576 context established by the referencing profile. In this case, the referenced profile is termed a
1577 mandatory profile of the referencing profile.

- 1578 • **Conditional**

1579 A conditional profile usage indicates that the definitions of the referenced profile under specified
1580 conditions apply in the context of the referencing profile. In this case, the referenced profile is
1581 termed a conditional profile of the referencing profile.

- 1582 • **Conditional exclusive**

1583 A conditional exclusive profile usage indicates that the definitions of the referenced profile under
1584 specified conditions apply in the context of the referencing profile, and shall not apply if the
1585 specified conditions do not apply. In this case, the referenced profile is termed a conditional
1586 exclusive profile of the referencing profile.

- 1587 • **Optional**

1588 An optional profile usage indicates that the definitions of the referenced profile optionally apply
1589 in the context of the referencing profile, as far as elements affected by these definitions are
1590 selected by an implementer. In this case, the referenced profile is termed an optional profile of
1591 the referencing profile.

1592 A referencing profile shall indicate the type of profile reference by using the respective keyword, as
1593 designated in **bold face** in the previous list.

1594 As a consequence of a profile reference, the definitions and requirements of the referenced profiles
1595 become part of the set of definitions and requirements that are effective for the referencing profile;
1596 however, this applies in different ways for profile derivation as opposed to profile usages. The process of
1597 how to determine the definitions and requirements that effectively apply for an implementation
1598 implementing a set of profiles are detailed in clause 9.

1599 7.9.1.3 Identification of the minimally required version of a referenced profile

1600 The identification of the minimally required version of a referenced profile shall be stated with all of the
1601 following:

- 1602 • the registered profile name of the referenced profile (see 7.6.2)
- 1603 • the major version identifier, the minor version identifier and optionally the update identifier of the
1604 registered profile version of the referenced profile (see 7.6.3). The update identifier should only
1605 be used in cases where dependencies on the referenced update version exist that are not
1606 already addressed by the minor version.
- 1607 • the registered organization (see 7.6.4) of the referenced profile

1608 Regardless of whether an update identifier is stated, the latest published update version with the stated
1609 major and minor version identifier is referenced; in other words, while an update identifier identifies the
1610 minimally required update version, it shall be interpreted as referring to the latest update version
1611 published after the minimally required update version. For further details, see [DSP4004](#).

1612 7.9.1.4 Prohibition of the relaxation of requirements

1613 A referencing profile shall not redefine mandatory definitions of referenced profiles as conditional or
1614 optional and shall not redefine conditional definitions of a referenced profile as optional.

1615 A referencing profile shall not remove any constraints established by its referenced profiles.

1616 7.9.1.5 Rules for the repetition of content from referenced profiles

1617 A referencing profile shall not repeat content of its referenced profiles unless it establishes additional
1618 constraints. Even in this case repetitions should be avoided unless necessary to establish a context for
1619 the additional constraints.

1620 NOTE For rules on the repetition of schema content as part of property requirements, see 7.13.2.8.3.

1621 7.9.1.6 Rules for derived adaptations

1622 A profile may define adaptations based on adaptations defined in referenced profiles; for details, see
1623 7.13.2.1 and 7.13.2.4.

1624 In this case the profile relationships to each profile defining one or more base adaptations shall be
1625 defined in compliance with the following rules:

- 1626 • If mandatory base adaptations are defined, the relationship to each referenced profile defining a
1627 mandatory base adaptation shall be mandatory or derivation.
- 1628 • If conditional base adaptations are defined, the relationship to each referenced profile defining a
1629 conditional base adaptation shall be mandatory, derivation, conditional, or conditional exclusive.
1630 In the case of conditional or conditional exclusive, the condition shall be at least the conjunction
1631 of all individual conditions, or stronger.

1632 7.9.2 Definition of profile derivation

1633 7.9.2.1 General

1634 Subclause 7.9.2 defines rules that ensure that a client that exploits the management interface defined by
1635 a base profile can likewise interact through that management interface with profile implementations of the
1636 base profile or with those of derived profiles.

1637 DEPRECATED

1638 Version 1.0 of this guide defined the term *profile specialization*. This term was deprecated and replaced
1639 by *profile derivation*, because profile specialization does not address the possible cases of expanding the
1640 management domain addressed by and extending the management interface defined by the base profile.

1641 DEPRECATED

1642 A derived profile should be based on exactly one *direct* base profile.

1643 New derived profiles written in conformance to this guide shall be based on exactly one direct base
1644 profile. Minor revisions of existing profiles written in conformance with version 1.0 of this guide that define
1645 more than base profile in the original profile may retain defining more than one direct base profile.

1646 DEPRECATED

1647 Version 1.0 of this guide allowed multiple inheritance, such that a derived profile could be directly based
1648 on more than one profile. This is deprecated because it enables the definition of derived profiles while not
1649 ensuring polymorphism; that is, it is not ensured that a client written against the definition of any base
1650 profile could interact with the profile implementation of the derived profile. Furthermore, there are no rules
1651 with respect to the merge of implementation requirements resulting from definitions of the base profiles
1652 and the derived profiles, and there are no rules that prohibited a derived profile from being based on a set
1653 of base profiles with contradicting requirements.

1654 DEPRECATED

1655 In this guide, when referring to more than one base profile, this means the direct base profile and possible
1656 indirect base profiles. This is because profile derivation may be applied at more than one level, such that
1657 a base profile likewise may be a derived profile. For example, a profile A may be based on a profile B,
1658 and profile B may be based on profile C, and so forth. Consequently a derived profile — while having
1659 exactly one *direct* base profile — can have additional *indirect* base profiles.

1660 A derived profile inherits definitions of all its (direct or indirect) base profiles, as follows:

- 1661 • management domain context
- 1662 • schema references
- 1663 • features
- 1664 • profile references
- 1665 • registry references
- 1666 • adaptations (including their property requirements, method requirements, operation
1667 requirements and metric requirements)
- 1668 • use cases

1669 Other definitions of base profiles are not inherited by a derived profile and need to be exclusively defined
1670 by the derived profile; in some of these cases, definitions in 7.9.2 constrain the possible choices of a
1671 derived profile.

1672 **NOTE** Special implementation requirements apply for derived profiles. For example, all implementation
1673 requirements defined by a derived profile need to be merged with those of its base profiles; for details, see
1674 clause 9.

1675 7.9.2.2 Propagation of the management domain

1676 A derived profile may address a management domain that may be restricted, expanded or unchanged
1677 with respect to the management domains addressed by its (direct or indirect) base profiles. For example,
1678 if a base profile applies to the management domain of network port management, a derived profile may
1679 restrict that to the management of Ethernet network ports.

1680 The management interface defined by base profiles completely becomes a part of the interface defined
1681 by the derived profile for its management domain. This rule ensures that clients exploiting the
1682 management interface as defined by a base profile can interact with a profile implementation of a derived
1683 profile to the same extent as with a profile implementation of the base profile.

1684 A derived profile may define extensions beyond the management interface defined by base profiles.

1685 7.9.2.3 Propagation of constraints

1686 A derived profile inherits constraints on profile elements from its (direct or indirect) base profiles. More
1687 specifically, if profile elements defined in base profiles are not redefined in the derived profile, the
1688 definitions of the base profiles apply without changes. Also, if a derived profile redefines profile elements
1689 defined in its base profiles, the constraints defined in the base profiles apply for the redefined profile
1690 elements as stated in the base profiles and without being restated by the derived profile.

1691 A derived profile may specify additional constraints; in this case, the additional constraints shall not
1692 violate the inherited constraints.

1693 The effects of this rule are different with respect to data sent or received by an implementation. For
1694 example, if a base profile requires an output parameter to have only the values "4", "5", or "6", definitions
1695 in the derived profile are restricted to this value set, but are allowed to reduce that to any subset, such as
1696 "4" and "6". However, in the case of an input parameter, the derived profile is not allowed to further
1697 reduce the value set, because a client written against the base profile may use all values as defined by
1698 the base profile.

1699 Consequently, there are rules for extending or reducing the value set for input/output parameters and
1700 return values in a derived profile; see 7.13.3.2.2. Likewise, this applies to properties that are readable and
1701 writable.

1702 NOTE A profile implementation of a derived profile is required to satisfy the requirements of all its (direct and
1703 indirect) base profiles. Thus, a client written against the management interface defined by a base profile
1704 also works with a profile implementation of a derived profile. Implementation requirements are detailed in
1705 clause 9.

1706 7.9.2.4 Propagation of requirement levels

1707 A derived profile inherits profile elements with the same requirement level as that defined by its (direct or
1708 indirect) base profiles; this means that profile elements defined in base profiles are considered part of a
1709 derived profile with the same requirement level, without requiring a new definition in the derived profile.

1710 A derived profile may redefine optional profile elements of its base profiles as conditional, mandatory or
1711 prohibited, and may redefine conditional profile elements of its base profiles as mandatory.

1712 A derived profile may redefine conditional profile elements of its base profiles as conditional. In this case,
1713 the condition in the derived profile shall be satisfied if the condition in the base profile is satisfied.

1714 NOTE For example, consider a base profile that requires a conditional profile element if either the X feature or the
1715 Y feature is implemented; in this case a derived profile would not be allowed to narrow the condition such
1716 that it would require the conditional profile element only if the X feature is implemented. The reason is that
1717 a client of the base profile would expect the conditional profile element to be present also in the case
1718 where the Y feature is implemented.

1719 7.9.2.5 Definition of schema references

1720 A derived profile shall reference each schema that defines classes adapted by the profile; see 7.7 for a
1721 definition of the elements of schema references.

1722 A derived profile may introduce new schema references.

1723 The version of a referenced schema in a derived profile shall not be less recent than the most recent
1724 version of that schema in any base profile. A derived profile may refine a schema reference of a base
1725 profile by requiring a more recent version of the referenced schema.

1726 7.9.2.6 Propagation of the central and scoping class adaptations

1727 The scoping class adaptation of a derived profile shall be based on the scoping class adaptation of its
1728 direct base profile. For the adapted class and for other base adaptations the provisions of 7.13.2.1 apply.

1729 The central class adaptation of a derived profile shall be based on the central class adaptation of its direct
1730 base profile. For the adapted class and for other base adaptations the provisions of 7.13.2.1 apply.

1731 7.9.2.7 Propagation of profile references

1732 A derived profile inherits all profile references (see 7.9.1) defined by its (direct or indirect) base profiles;
1733 this also applies to the names of the profile references.

1734 A derived profile may introduce new profile references.

1735 A derived profile may override a profile reference made in a base profile with a profile reference that
1736 references a profile derived from the profile referenced by the base profile. An overriding profile reference
1737 defined in a derived profile shall state the same profile reference name as that used by the profile
1738 reference defined in the base profile; in effect, the use of the same profile reference name establishes the
1739 override.

1740 7.9.2.8 Propagation of registry references

1741 A derived profile inherits all registry references (see 7.12) defined by its (direct or indirect) base profiles;
1742 this also applies to the names of the registry references.

1743 A derived profile may introduce new registry references.

1744 A derived profile may override registry references made in base profiles with registry references that
1745 reference compatible registries. New minor or update versions of the originally referenced registry version
1746 are always compatible. New major versions of the originally referenced registry version and different
1747 registries are compatible to the originally referenced registry version if all registry elements required by
1748 the base profile(s) are compatibly defined in that registry version. An overriding registry reference defined
1749 in a derived profile shall state the same registry reference name as that used by the registry reference
1750 defined in the base profile; in effect, the use of the same registry reference name establishes the
1751 override.

1752 7.9.2.9 Propagation of features

1753 A derived profile inherits all features (see 7.15) defined by its (direct or indirect) base profiles; this also
1754 applies to the names of the features.

1755 A derived profile may introduce new features.

1756 If the name of a feature defined by a derived profile is identical to the name of a feature defined in one of
1757 its base profiles, the feature defined by the derived profile shall be a refinement of the feature defined in
1758 the base profile.

1759 A derived profile may refine features defined in base profiles. For a refined feature it is required that the
1760 set of definitions conditional on the refined feature is a superset of the set of definitions conditional on the
1761 original feature, that is, the refined feature requires at least the definitions of the original feature, but may
1762 require more definitions. An overriding feature defined in a derived profile shall state the same name as
1763 that used by the feature defined in the base profile; in effect, the use of the same name establishes the
1764 override.

1765 **7.9.2.10 Propagation of adaptations**

1766 A derived profile inherits adaptations (see 7.13) defined by its (direct or indirect) base profiles in the
1767 following two cases:

1768 **Case A** : The derived profile defines a new adaptation that is based on one or more adaptations
1769 defined in its base profiles. In this case, the rules for basing an adaptation on other adaptations as
1770 defined in 7.13.2.1 apply. The name of the adaptation defined by the derived profile may differ from
1771 the name of the adaptation defined by the base profile.

1772 For example, an Example Ethernet Port profile may define an EthernetPort adaptation of the
1773 CIM_EthernetPort class for the representation of Ethernet ports that is based on a NetworkPort
1774 adaptation of the CIM_NetworkPort class that is defined by a base Example Network Port profile.

1775 **Case B** : Adaptations defined by base profiles not referenced as a base adaptation of one of the
1776 adaptations defined by the derived profile are propagated without changes into the derived profile,
1777 including references to properties, methods, and operations. The adaptation name defined by the
1778 base profile becomes an adaptation name of the derived profile. If naming conflicts result from this
1779 rule, they shall be resolved by the derived profile through the application of case A. A not apparent
1780 source for naming conflicts is the case where a new release of a base profile defined an adaptation
1781 with a name in use by an already existing derived profile.

1782 A derived profile may define new adaptations in addition to those defined by its base profiles.

1783 **7.9.2.11 Propagation of state descriptions and use cases**

1784 A derived profile inherits all state descriptions (see 7.16.2) and use cases (see 7.16) defined by its (direct
1785 or indirect) base profiles. A derived profile may introduce new state descriptions and use cases.

1786 A derived profile may refine and extend state descriptions and use cases defined in base profiles. A
1787 refinement replaces the use of some adaptations defined in base profiles in with that of respective derived
1788 adaptations defined in the subject profile. An extension of a use case adds additional steps. An extension
1789 of a state description adds additional adaptation instances. A refinement or extension of a state
1790 description or use case defined in a derived profile shall state the same name as that used by the state
1791 description or use case defined in the base profile; in effect, the use of the same name establishes the
1792 refinement or extension.

1793 **7.9.3 Definition of scoping relationships**

1794 **7.9.3.1 General**

1795 Scoping is a refinement of profile usage (see 7.9.1) that optimizes the conformance advertisement of
1796 component profile implementations by reducing the number of required CIM_ElementConformsToProfile
1797 association instances; for details, see 7.14 and [DSP1033](#).

1798 Four elements contribute to defining a scoping relationship:

- 1799 • The central class adaptation (see 7.9.3.2) defined by the used profile
- 1800 • The scoping class adaptation (see 7.9.3.3) defined by the used profile

- 1801 • The scoping path (see 7.9.3.4) defined by the used profile
- 1802 • The central class adaptation (see 7.9.3.2) defined by the referencing profile

1803 A scoping relationship is established with a profile usage if the central class adaptation defined by the
1804 referencing profile is based on (see 7.13.2.1) the scoping class adaptation defined by the used profile.

1805 For example, an Example Fan profile might define a FanSystem adaptation of the CIM_System class as
1806 its scoping class adaptation, and an Example Computer System profile might define its ComputerSystem
1807 adaptation of the CIM_ComputerSystem class as the central class adaptation, and base it on the
1808 FanSystem adaptation of the Example Fan profile. In this case the Example Computer System profile
1809 defines a scoping relationship to the Example Fan profile, because the central class adaptation of the
1810 referencing profile is based on the scoping class adaptation of the used profile.

1811 Note that not every profile usage implies a scoping relationship; a scoping relationship is only defined if
1812 the central class adaptation of the referencing profile is based on the scoping class adaptation of the used
1813 profile. For example, the Example Fan profile might reference an Example Sensors profile that defines a
1814 SensorSystem adaptation of the CIM_System class as its scoping class adaptation; in this case the
1815 Example Fan profile does not (and cannot for class compatibility reasons; see 7.13.2.1) define its central
1816 class adaptation based on the scoping class adaptation of the Example Sensors profile.

1817 **7.9.3.2 Central class adaptation**

1818 A profile shall designate exactly one mandatory class adaptation as the central class adaptation.

1819 For requirements relating to profile registration, see 7.14.

1820 The central class adaptation is the focal point of a subject profile. It should model the central managed
1821 object type in the management domain that is addressed by the subject profile.

1822 **7.9.3.3 Scoping class adaptation**

1823 A component profile (see 7.8.3) shall designate exactly one mandatory class adaptation as the scoping
1824 class adaptation. In this case, the scoping class adaptation shall be different from the designated central
1825 class adaptation (see 7.9.3.2).

1826 An autonomous profile (see 7.8.2) shall either not designate a scoping class adaptation, or shall
1827 designate the same class adaptation as both the central class adaptation (see 7.9.3.2) and the scoping
1828 class adaptation.

1829 For requirements relating to profile registration, see 7.14.

1830 The scoping class adaptation provides an external attach point for scoping profiles. A scoping profile may
1831 connect to that attach point by defining its central class adaptation based on the scoping class adaptation
1832 defined in used profiles.

1833 **7.9.3.4 Scoping path**

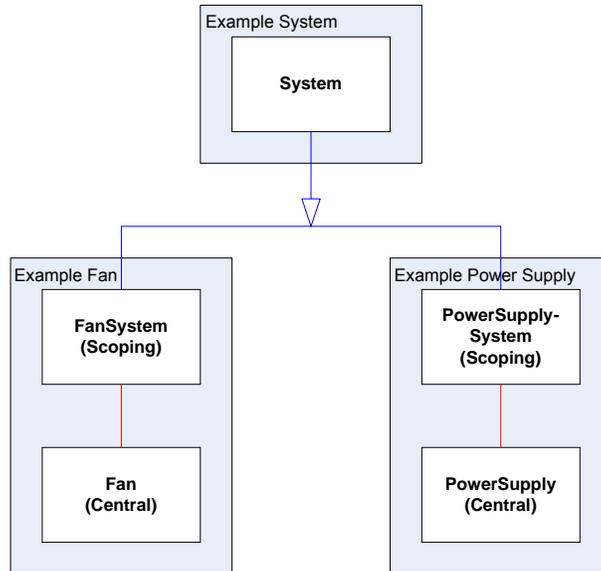
1834 A scoping path is an association traversal path defined by the subject profile connecting its central class
1835 adaptation with its scoping class adaptation.

1836 Each component profile shall define a scoping path. The scoping path shall be specified by a set of
1837 adaptations of associations and ordinary classes that are defined by the subject profile. The scoping path
1838 shall enable bi-directional navigation between instances of the central class adaptation and instances of
1839 the scoping class adaptation.

1840 **7.9.3.5 Examples of scoping relationships**

- 1841 • Autonomous profile with optional component profiles

1842 Embedded control systems optionally include management interfaces for elements such as fans
 1843 or power supplies. In this case, the primary management interface addressing the core
 1844 functionality of the control systems would be defined in the autonomous profile, whereas the
 1845 secondary management interfaces addressing the functionality of the fan and power supply
 1846 elements would be defined in separate component profiles. This is shown in Figure 4.



1847

1848 **Figure 4 – Autonomous profile with optional component profiles**

- 1849 • Multiple autonomous profiles sharing component profiles
- 1850 Disk arrays and volume managers provide similar RAID virtualization capabilities from a device
 1851 of host-resident software. In this case, a RAID virtualization component profile could be
 1852 referenced (shared) by an Array (external virtualization hardware) autonomous profile, and by a
 1853 Volume Manager (host-resident virtualization software) autonomous profile.

- 1854 • Referenced component profiles, scoped to the same autonomous profile

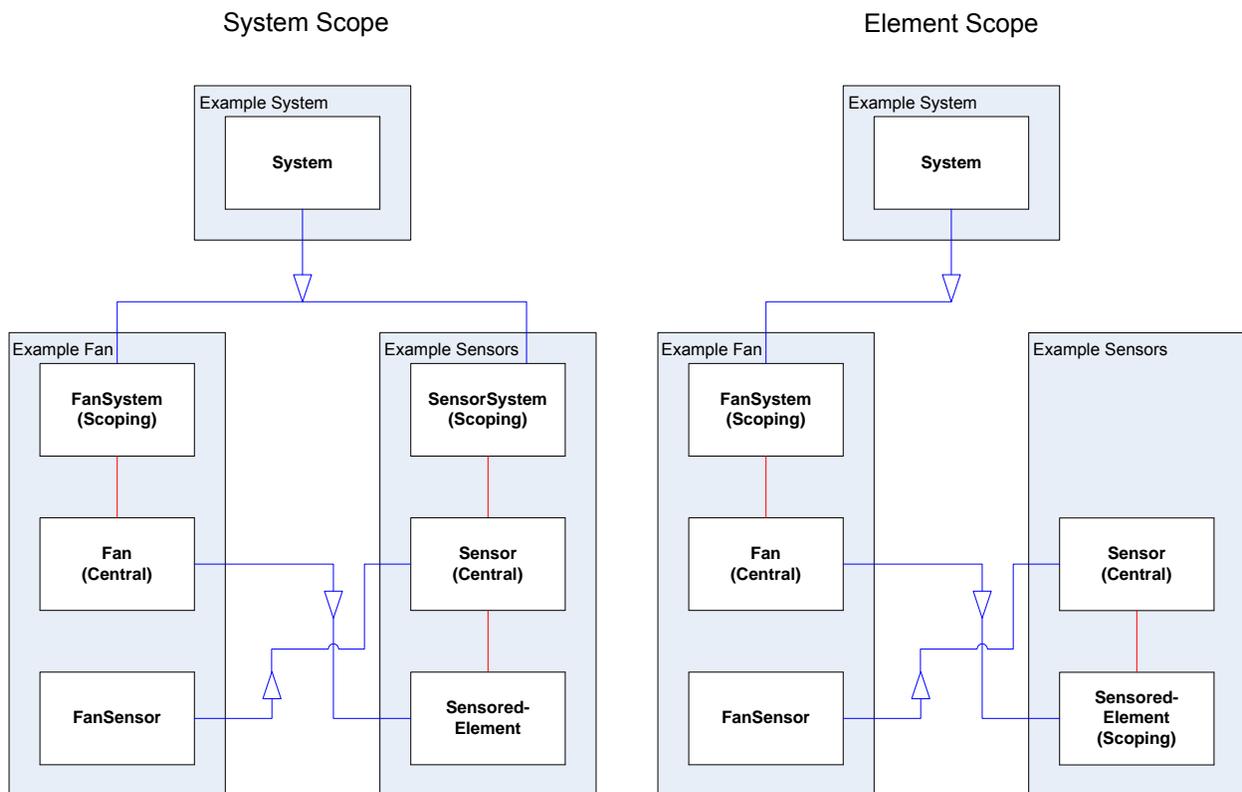
1855 Many types of systems include batteries — sometimes batteries are configured in redundant
 1856 sets. This could be modeled as a Battery component profile with a separate, optional Battery
 1857 Redundancy component profile. Elements of component profiles are scoped to a System
 1858 instance defined in the context of an autonomous profile in the scoping hierarchy.

- 1859 • Scoping between component profiles

1860 Figure 5 shows two variants of an Example Fan profile referencing an Example Sensors profile:

- 1861 – The left side of Figure 5 shows the example with a scoping relationship established by an
 1862 autonomous Example System profile for both an Example Fan and an Example Sensors
 1863 profile by basing the Example System profile's System adaptation on both the FanSystem
 1864 adaptation of the Example Fan profile and the SensorSystem adaptation of the Example
 1865 Sensors profile.
- 1866 – The right side of Figure 5 shows a variant of this example with the scoping relationship for
 1867 the Example Sensors profile established by the Example Fan profile; in this case the
 1868 Example Fan profile bases its (central) Fan adaptation on the (scoping) SensoredElement
 1869 adaptation of the Example Sensors profile, thereby establishing a scoping relationship.
 1870 Note that the SensoredElement adaptation adapts the CIM_ManagedSystemElement

1871 class. That way any profile adapting the CIM_ManagedSystemElement class (or a
 1872 subclass thereof) as its central class adaptation could define a scoping relationship to the
 1873 Example Sensors profile.



1874
 1875 **Figure 5 – Two variants of a component profile using another component profile**

1876 Note that the right variant shown in Figure 5 would require the central class profile advertisement
 1877 methodology as defined in the Profile Registration profile (see [DSP1033](#)) to be implemented for the
 1878 Example Fan profile because version 1.0 of the Profile Registration profile does not allow the scoping
 1879 class profile advertisement methodology span two or more levels of profiles.

1880 **7.10 Definition of abstract and concrete profiles**

1881 **7.10.1 Abstract profile**

1882 An abstract profile is a special kind of profile specifying common elements and behavior as a base for
 1883 derived profiles.

1884 An abstract profile is explicitly designated as abstract.

1885 An abstract profile shall not be implemented directly; instead, the definitions and requirements of an
 1886 abstract profile are propagated into derived profiles (see 7.9.2) and apply for profile implementations
 1887 implementing concrete derived profiles.

1888 An abstract profile may define class adaptations of concrete classes and/or abstract classes.

1889 An abstract profile may define concrete class adaptations and/or abstract class adaptations.

1890 An abstract profile may be a derived profile, and may be further derived.

1891 Abstract profiles serve two purposes:

- 1892 • Provide a base for derived profiles
- 1893 • Provide a point of reference for referencing profiles

1894 For example, an abstract profile could be defined for the management domain of basic computer system
 1895 management, and derived profiles could tailor that to various types of computer systems such as desktop
 1896 computer systems or virtual computer systems.

1897 Profiles may define a profile usage relationship to abstract profiles. For example, a profile addressing the
 1898 management domain of virtual computer system could define a profile usage of an abstract profile
 1899 addressing the management domain of allocating resources to consumers.

1900 **7.10.2 Concrete profile**

1901 A concrete profile is any profile that is not an abstract profile. Only concrete profiles may be directly
 1902 implemented. A concrete profile may be a derived profile, and a derived profile may be based on both
 1903 concrete profiles and/or abstract profiles.

1904 Specific requirements for the definition of adaptations of abstract classes apply; see 7.13.5.

1905 Furthermore, 7.14 defines requirements for concrete profiles related to profile registration.

1906 **7.11 Definition of the management domain**

1907 A profile should define the set of managed object types from the management domain addressed by the
 1908 profile. These definitions should define the functionality of respective managed objects to the extent
 1909 exposed by the model defined by the profile such that an implementer who implements the profile for a
 1910 particular type of managed environment is enabled to realize the profile defined mappings (see 6.6.1).

1911 In some cases it may be sufficient to refer to respective definitions in the schema definition of adapted
 1912 classes. However, generally profiles adapt generic classes to model a more specific managed object type
 1913 than that described in the schema definition of each adapted class.

1914 For example, in Table 1 a simple definition of a management domain by a profile defining a management
 1915 interface for the management of files and file systems is shown.

1916 **Table 1 – Example management domain definition**

X-6	Description
	This profile addresses the management domain of file management. The major object types are files, directories, and file systems.
	A <i>file system</i> is a set of files that is collectively stored. A file system and its files are accessible by clients. Each file system contains one root directory.
	A <i>file</i> is a block of arbitrary information that is stored in a file system. Each file shall have an identifier that uniquely identifies the file in the scope of a file system. Files may be referenced by one or more directories; each such file reference defines a file name that shall be unique within the referencing directory.
	A <i>directory</i> is a special kind of file that contains a list of references to files; each list entry references one file. A directory shall assign a name to each referenced file that is unique in scope of the directory.

1917 In this example the management domain definition shown in Table 1 would enable a profile
 1918 implementation of the file management profile for the FAT file system to establish a mapping between
 1919 object types defined by the file management profile and respective elements defined by the specification
 1920 of the FAT file system.

1921 7.12 Definition of registry references

1922 Profiles may reference message registries and metric registries.

1923 Message registries are registries that conform to [DSP0228](#) and contain message definitions.

1924 Metric registries are registries that conform to [DSP8020](#) and contain metric definitions.

1925 A registry reference is a named profile element (see 7.2.2) that references a registry by stating the type of
 1926 the referenced registry and by identifying the minimally required version of the referenced registry. A
 1927 subject profile defining registry references should provide a description that details the use of each
 1928 referenced registry within the subject profile.

1929 A registry reference shall be assigned a name as defined in 7.2.2.

1930 NOTE The use of a local name for registry references provides for the possibility of overrides if subsequent
 1931 versions of a profile need to refer to a different registry that compatibly supersedes the originally
 1932 referenced registry; see 7.9.2.8. Furthermore, the local name is used to identify the registry when
 1933 referencing elements defined within the registry.

1934 The type of the referenced registry shall be either message registry or metric registry.

1935 The identification of the minimally required version of the referenced registry shall be stated with all of the
 1936 following:

- 1937 • the unique identifier of the registry as assigned by the owning organization. For registries
 1938 conforming to [DSP0228](#) or [DSP8020](#), this is the value of the ID attribute; the fully qualified
 1939 XPATH location of the ID attribute in both types of registry is
 1940 /REGISTRY/REGISTRY_DECLARATION/IDENTIFICATION/@ID.
- 1941 • the major version identifier, the minor version identifier, and optionally the update identifier of
 1942 the registry. The update identifier should only be used in cases where dependencies on the
 1943 update version exist that are not already addressed by the minor version. Regardless of
 1944 whether an update identifier is stated, the latest published update version with the stated major
 1945 and minor version identifier is referenced; in other words, while an update identifier identifies the
 1946 minimally required update version, it shall be interpreted as referring to the latest update version
 1947 published after the minimally required update version. For further details, see [DSP4004](#).
- 1948 • the organization that owns the registry

1949 Profiles may refer to messages defined in message registries, as part of their other definitions.

1950 As part of their other definitions, profiles may refer to metric definitions defined in metric registries.

1951 7.13 Definition of class adaptations

1952 7.13.1 General

1953 A class adaptation is a named profile element; the rules defined in 7.2.2 apply. Class adaptations may be
 1954 referred to simply as *adaptations*.

1955 An adaptation defines the use of a class defined in a schema for a particular purpose.

1956 In addition to *adapting* a schema defined class, an adaptation may further be *based on* one or more other
 1957 adaptations. The subject profile may establish further constraints for an adaptation beyond those
 1958 established by the schema definition of the adapted class, or by referenced adaptations.

1959 DEPRECATED

1960 Profiles that were created in conformance with version 1.0 of this guide did not define adaptations, but so
 1961 called "*profile classes*" (sometimes also called "profiled class", "supported class" or just "class"). The
 1962 concept of "profile classes" obliterated the distinction between the schema definition of a class, and the
 1963 profile defined use of the class. The semantics of "profile classes" can viewed as a subset of the
 1964 semantics of adaptations; for example, "profile classes" lack the ability to be based on each other. A
 1965 "profile class" used the name of the adapted schema class; that name could be suffixed with an optional
 1966 modifier in order to resolve name clashes.

1967 Minor revisions of profiles specified in compliance with version 1.0 of this guide may continue using the
 1968 following naming convention for adaptations (stated in ABNF):

1969 `ProfileClassName = SchemaClassName ["(" Modifier ")"]`

1970 `SchemaClassName` is the name of the class defined in the schema. `Modifier` is a short descriptor that
 1971 describes the use of the adapted class in the context of the profile. The modifier should be composed of
 1972 less than 30 characters.

1973 Examples:

1974 `CIM_ComputerSystem`

1975 `CIM_ComputerSystem (Switch)`

1976 `CIM_StoragePool (Primordial pool)`

1977 This naming convention shall only be applied for existing definitions of "profile classes" in minor revisions
 1978 of existing profiles. Newly introduced adaptations in minor revisions shall not apply this naming
 1979 convention.

1980 DEPRECATED

1981 7.13.2 Requirements for definitions of all kinds of adaptations

1982 This subclause defines requirements for definitions of all kinds of adaptations: Adaptations of ordinary
 1983 classes, adaptations of association classes, and adaptations of indication classes.

1984 7.13.2.1 Adapted class and base adaptations

1985 An adaptation adapts a class defined in a schema for a particular purpose; this class is called the adapted
 1986 class.

1987 In addition, an adaptation may be based on zero or more other adaptations; these adaptations are called
 1988 base adaptations.

1989 For a particular adaptation, the following rules apply:

- 1990
- **Rule I:** One adapted class.

1991 An adaptation shall identify exactly one class defined in a schema as the adapted class.

- 1992
- **Rule II:** Zero or more base adaptations.

1993 An adaptation may reference one or more adaptations defined in the same or in referenced
 1994 profiles as base adaptations.

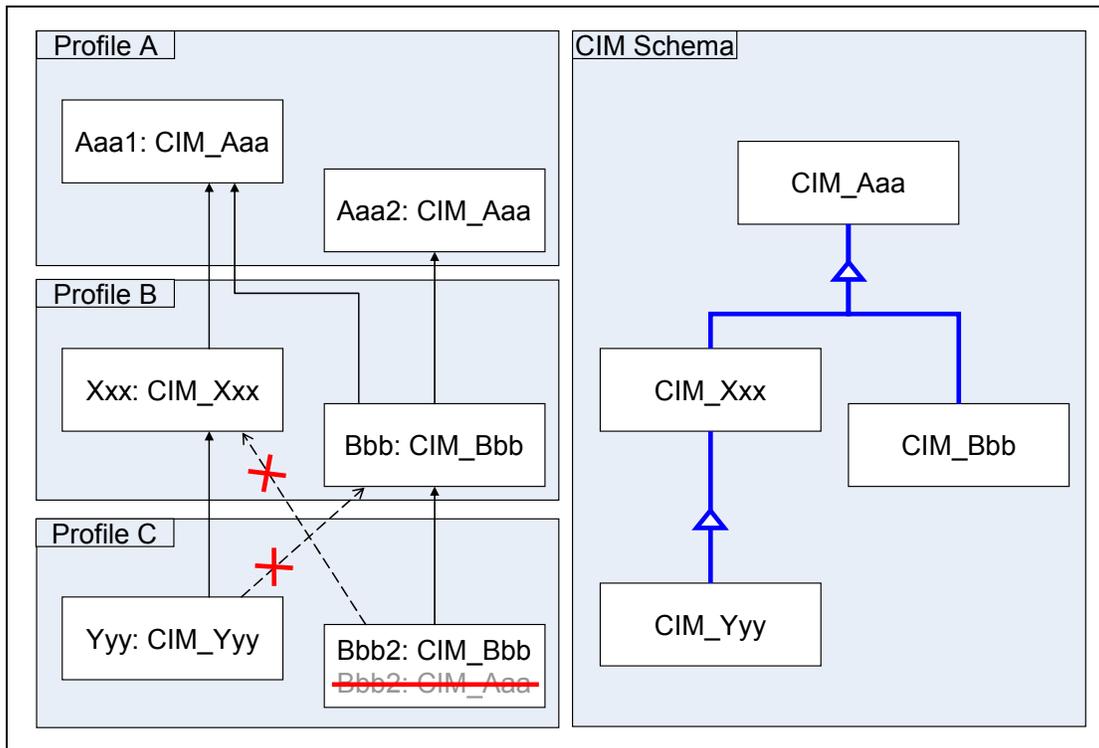
- 1995
- **Rule III:** Compatibility of the adapted class with that of base adaptations.

1996 If a class adaptation A adapts a class C and is based on one or more other adaptations A₁
 1997 adapting C₁, A₂ adapting C₂, ..., A_n adapting C_n, then C shall be the same or a subclass of any
 1998 C_i, i=1...n.

1999 NOTE The last requirement ensures that a profile implementation of the subject profile can implement class C
 2000 without verifying whether a base adaptation requires the implementation of a subclass of C. This enables
 2001 the supplementary addition of the profile implementation of a new component profile to a previously
 2002 existing implementation of a set of profiles, where the new component profile is not referenced.

2003 A class adaptation, its adapted class, its set of base adaptations, and their adapted classes form a
 2004 directed acyclic graph (DAG). This graph is called the span of the class adaptation.

2005 Figure 6 shows an example that illustrates how the rules defined in this subclause establish limitations for
 2006 the selection of base adaptations or of adaptable classes, after an initial choice is made.



2007

2008

Figure 6 – Class adaptation reference example

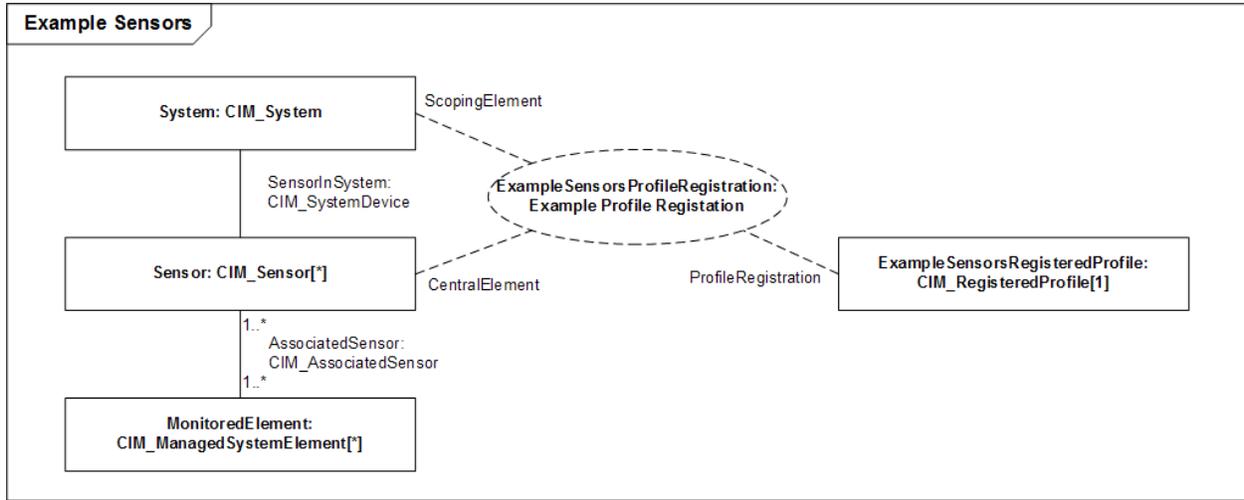
2009 In the example shown in Figure 6, the crossed relationships would violate Rule II, as follows:

- 2010 • Adaptation Yyy must not be based on adaptation Bbb because Yyy adapts CIM_Yyy, but Bbb
 2011 adapts CIM_Bbb that is not CIM_Yyy or a superclass of CIM_Yyy; likewise, adaptation Bbb2
 2012 must not be based on adaptation Xxx.
- 2013 • Adaptation Bbb2 must not adapt CIM_Aaa, because Bbb2 is based on Bbb, and Bbb adapts
 2014 CIM_Bbb that is a subclass of CIM_Aaa.

2015 Profiles shall not adapt classes that are marked as deprecated in their schema definition, except in the
 2016 case where a revision of an existing profile retains an adaptation of a class that was marked as
 2017 deprecated in a later version of the schema.

2018 If an adaptation is based on one or more base adaptations, all of the following rules apply for that
 2019 adaptation:

- 2020 • All definitions and requirements defined by base adaptations are propagated into the
 - 2021 adaptation.
 - 2022 • The potential set of instances of an adaptation shall be a subset of the potential set of instances
 - 2023 of each of its base adaptations. For example, if the VirtualSystem adaptation defined by an
 - 2024 Example Virtual System profile is based on the ComputerSystem adaptation of an Example
 - 2025 Computer System profile, then the potential set of instances of the VirtualSystem adaptation is
 - 2026 required to be a subset of the potential set of instances of the ComputerSystem adaptation.
- 2027 DMTF collaboration structure diagrams (see 8.3.4) are specifically tailored to graphically depict the
- 2028 dependencies introduced by basing adaptations on other adaptations.



2029

Figure 7 – DMTF collaboration structure diagram of an Example Sensors profile

2030

2031 Figure 7 shows the DMTF collaboration structure diagram of an Example Sensors profile; for details about

2032 DMTF collaboration structure diagrams, see 8.3.4.

2033 In Figure 7, the dashed oval labeled "ExampleSensorsProfileRegistration: Example Profile Registration"

2034 represents the Example Sensors profile's reference to the Example Profile Registration profile. The solid

2035 rectangle labeled "Sensor: CIM_Sensor" represents the Example Sensors profile's Sensor adaptation of

2036 the CIM_Sensor class. The dashed line labeled "CentralElement" indicates that the Sensor adaptation of

2037 the Example Sensors profile is based on the CentralElement adaptation of the Example Profile

2038 Registration profile. Likewise, the System adaptation of the Example Sensors profile is based on the

2039 ScopingElement adaptation of the Example Profile Registration profile, and the

2040 ExampleSensorsRegisteredProfile adaptation of the Example Sensors profile is based on the

2041 RegisteredProfile adaptation of the Example Profile Registration profile.

2042 The capability of basing adaptations on other adaptations enables encapsulation, resulting in simplified

2043 modeling approaches. For example, in Figure 7 an adaptation of the CIM_ElementConformsToProfile

2044 association is not shown. Instead, it is assumed that a respective association adaptation is defined by the

2045 Example Profile Registration profile. That way, the different approaches to modeling the functionality

2046 related to profile registration is exclusively defined in the Example Profile Registration profile, and there is

2047 no need to refine that adaptation in the Example Sensors profile.

2048 Furthermore, the capability of basing adaptations defined in one profile on adaptations defined in

2049 referenced profiles provides for a much finer granularity of profile dependencies: With this approach

2050 requirements are introduced at the level of adaptations rather than at the level of profiles. For example,

2051 the approach of basing the central and scoping adaptations on respective adaptations of the Example

2052 Profile Registration Profile as shown in Figure 7 is much stricter than that of only referencing the Example
2053 Profile Registration Profile as a mandatory profile.

2054 7.13.2.2 Management domain context of class adaptations

2055 For each adaptation it defines, the subject profile shall state the managed object type from the
2056 management domain (or the aspect of a managed object type) that is modeled by the adaptation. See
2057 7.11 for requirements on defining the management domain and its managed object types.

2058 NOTE Elements from the CIM infrastructure can also be described by managed object types, such as, for
2059 example, registered profiles or indication filters. While without CIM these elements would not exist as
2060 managed objects in a managed environment (unlike, for example, computer systems or file systems), they
2061 are part of the managed environment if CIM is applied for defining and realizing the management
2062 infrastructure, and are modeled by adaptations of CIM classes. For example, an Example Profile
2063 Registration profile might model a RegisteredProfile adaptation of the CIM_RegisteredProfile class
2064 modeling the managed object type "registered profile", or an Example Indications profile might model an
2065 IndicationFilter adaptation of the CIM_IndicationFilter class modeling the managed object type "indication
2066 filter".

2067 For adaptations of association classes, the management domain context may be specified in the form of
2068 a relationship, such as, for example, a containment.

2069 For adaptations of indication classes, the management domain context may be specified by stating the
2070 event that is reported by instances of the adapted indication class.

2071 7.13.2.3 Requirement level

2072 For each adaptation it defines, the subject profile shall designate a requirement level that determines the
2073 requirement for implementing the adaptation as part of the profile implementation of the subject profile.

2074 7.13.2.4 Individual requirement levels of base adaptations

2075 If an adaptation is based on other adaptations (see 7.13.2.1), then each such relationship shall be
2076 designated with a separate requirement level that determines the requirement for implementing the base
2077 adaptation as part of implementing the subject adaptation.

2078 NOTE The typical requirement level for a base adaptation is mandatory. In some cases a requirement level of
2079 conditional/conditional exclusive for a feature is a favorable alternative. As an example, consider the case
2080 in which the subject profile defines an optional Metrics feature. In this case, some adaptations of the
2081 subject profile would typically be based on adaptations defined in the Base Metrics profile, but only if the
2082 optional Metrics feature of the subject profile is implemented.

2083 7.13.2.5 Implementation type

2084 Each adaptation shall be designated with an implementation type that details how the adaptation is to be
2085 implemented.

2086 The following implementation types are possible:

2087 **instantiated**: indicates that the adaptation is to be implemented such that instances of the
2088 adaptation are instantiated on their own, i.e. they can be referenced with an instance path by a client.

2089 **embedded**: indicates that the adaptation is to be implemented such that instances of the adaptation
2090 are embedded into an embedding element; they cannot directly be referenced with an instance path
2091 by a client.

2092 **abstract**: indicates that the implementation type of the adaptation is defined by its derived
2093 adaptations. Profiles shall assign the abstract implementation type if the functionality defined by the
2094 adaptation is not independently required for a functioning profile implementation, but instead is
2095 designed to be refined by other adaptations (defined in the same, or in other profiles) that define the

2096 abstract class adaptation as a base adaptation (for details, see 7.13.2.1). Insofar, the use of the
 2097 abstract implementation type delegates the selection of an implementation type to adaptations based
 2098 on the abstract class adaptation.

2099 **indication**: indicates that the adaptation is to be implemented such that instances of the adaptation
 2100 are embedded as elements in indication delivery operations. The "indication" implementation type is
 2101 only applicable for adaptations of classes that have effective qualifier values of Indication=True and
 2102 Exception=False.

2103 **exception**: indicates that the adaptation is to be implemented such that instances of the adaptation
 2104 are embedded into operation exceptions (typically delivered as fault responses of operations). The
 2105 "exception" implementation type is only applicable for adaptations of classes that have effective
 2106 qualifier values of Indication=True and Exception=True.

2107 DEPRECATED

2108 Profiles that were created in conformance with version 1.0 of this guide did not designate adaptations with
 2109 an implementation type. Minor revisions of profiles specified in compliance with version 1.0 of this guide
 2110 may continue not designating an implementation type to the adaptations they define. In this case, a
 2111 default implementation type shall be assumed, as follows:

- 2112 • For adaptations of classes that have effective qualifier values of Indication=True and
 2113 Exception=False, the default implementation type is "indication".
- 2114 • For adaptations of classes that have effective qualifier values of Indication=True and
 2115 Exception=True, the default implementation type is "exception".
- 2116 • For all other adaptations, the default implementation type is "instantiated".

2117 DEPRECATED

2118 7.13.2.6 Designation of base adaptation candidates

2119 A profile may designate individual adaptations as base adaptation candidates. The purpose of this
 2120 designation is conveying to authors of referencing profiles that — from the perspective of the defining
 2121 profile — the designated adaptation models a functional element with the intention to be refined by means
 2122 of defining derived adaptations in referencing profiles.

2123 NOTE Formally, any adaptation defined in a profile can be used as a base adaptation; however, the specific
 2124 designation of an adaptation as a base adaptation candidate is intended to serve as a hint to authors of
 2125 referencing profiles for considering the definition of a derived adaptation.

2126 7.13.2.7 Use of the value Null as property or parameter value

2127 [DSP0223](#) requires that on method invocation values are provided for all input parameters, and on method
 2128 return values are returned for all output parameters and for the method return value. However, unless
 2129 otherwise required by profiles and/or the schema, Null is a legal value. [DSP0004](#) states that the special
 2130 value Null indicates the absence of a value. Profiles should avoid assigning the value Null a semantic
 2131 other than that defined in [DSP0004](#). Profiles should specify the implementation behavior in the case of
 2132 the absence of an input parameter value (that is, an input value Null). Profiles should specify how the
 2133 absence of an output parameter value or of a method return value (that is, an output value Null) is to be
 2134 interpreted. This applies likewise to property values in adaptation instances that are used as input or
 2135 output value for parameters of methods or operations, or as method return values.

2136 7.13.2.8 Definition of property requirements**2137 7.13.2.8.1 General**

2138 For each adaptation it defines, the subject profile may define property requirements for properties that are
2139 exposed by the adapted class.

2140 7.13.2.8.2 Requirement level

2141 Each property requirement shall be designated with a "presentation" requirement level that determines
2142 the requirement for implementing the property as part implementing the adaptation for the purpose of
2143 presenting information.

2144 In addition, for adaptations with the "instantiated" implementation type (see 7.13.2.5) that a profile defines
2145 as creatable and/or modifiable by clients, separate requirement levels for specific property values may be
2146 specified:

- 2147 • An "initialization" requirement level that determines if the specific value shall be implemented as
2148 a property initialization value; for details, see 7.13.2.11.2.
- 2149 • A "modification" requirement level that determines if the specific value shall be implemented as
2150 a property modification value; for details, see 7.13.2.11.3.

2151 7.13.2.8.3 Rules for the repetition of schema requirements

2152 In adaptations mandatory property requirements shall be defined for all key properties and for all
2153 properties for which the Required qualifier has an effective value of True, unless respective property
2154 requirements are already stated by a base adaptation.

2155 NOTE This requirement aims at relieving profile consumers from analyzing the schema for respective
2156 requirements.

2157 Otherwise, a subject profile should not replicate requirements from the schema or from base profiles
2158 unless needed for establishing additional requirements of the subject profile.

2159 7.13.2.8.4 Requirements for the specification of property constraints

2160 The base set of permissible property values is defined by schema definition of the adapted class and/or
2161 its superclasses; as a matter of principle, schema definitions cannot be extended by profiles.

2162 A profile may specify constraints and requirements as part of property requirements. Any such constraints
2163 and requirements apply in addition to, and shall not contradict, any constraints and requirements defined
2164 in the adapted class, its superclasses and any base adaptation.

2165 In other words, profiles shall not specify property requirements that extend the set of permissible property
2166 values as constrained in base adaptations, but may specify property requirements that further constrain
2167 the set of permissible property values.

2168 In addition, for adaptations with the "instantiated" implementation type (see 7.13.2.5), separate value
2169 constraints may be specified for the presentation, the initialization and the modification of the property
2170 value; however, the value constraints for the initialization and modification shall be within those defined
2171 for the presentation.

2172 The schema definition of the adapted class, its superclasses, or any base adaptation may specify rules
2173 that prohibit or establish limitations for the definition of such constraints in general, or under certain
2174 conditions.

2175 Profiles shall not define property requirements for properties that are marked as deprecated in the
2176 schema definition of the adapted class, except within revisions of existing profiles that retain a property

2177 requirement for a property that was marked as deprecated in a subsequent version of the schema after
2178 the original version of the profile was released.

2179 **7.13.2.8.5 Management domain context of properties**

2180 As part of every property requirement, the profile shall specify the aspect of managed objects that
2181 represented by adaptation instances and is reflected by the property, unless that aspect is already
2182 precisely established by a base adaptation or an adapted class. For example, an Example Fan profile
2183 referencing the EnabledState property of the CIM_Fan class in its Fan adaptation would state that the
2184 value of the EnabledState property represents the state of the represented fan and relate values of the
2185 value set of the EnabledState property to possible fan states.

2186 **7.13.2.9 Default values for properties, parameters and method return values**

2187 A profile may specify a default value for a property, parameter or method return value. Profile specified
2188 default output values apply in the case where a more specific value is indiscernible by the profile
2189 implementation. For example, a profile could define the empty string "" as a default value for the
2190 ElementName property that is required by the schema to have a non-Null value. In this case that value
2191 would have to be returned in the case where a profile implementation is unable to produce a more
2192 specific value.

2193 NOTE The semantics of profile defined default values differ from schema defined default values as defined in
2194 [DSP0004](#). In the schema default values can only be defined for properties and are considered initialization
2195 constraints; initialization constraints determine the initial value of the property in new instances; see also
2196 7.13.3.3.3.

2197 **7.13.2.10 Value constraints for properties, parameters and method return values**

2198 **7.13.2.10.1 General**

2199 Profiles may define value constraints for properties, parameters and method return values using various
2200 mechanisms such as restricting a set of distinct values of numeric or string type in a value map, restricting
2201 a numeric value range, restricting bits in a bit map or constraints based on logical expressions of other
2202 constraints.

2203 If a profile defines value constraints, these should be defined allowing for adequate margin with respect to
2204 the implementations ability to represent (aspects of) managed objects by adaptation instances (see
2205 7.13.2.8.5), and with respect to represent the outcome of a method execution in the method result (see
2206 7.13.3.2.2 and 7.13.3.2.3).

2207 Value constraint do not imply value requirements; in other words, it is not required that all the values from
2208 the value set determined by the conjunction of the all value constraints are implemented. However, for
2209 input values, specific input value requirements may be specified (see 7.13.2.11).

2210 NOTE This guide also establishes specific conventions for the specification of value constraints in profile
2211 specifications; for details, see 10.2.4.

2212 **7.13.2.10.2 Value constraints for reference values**

2213 Profiles may define constraints as part of property requirements for reference properties in association
2214 adaptations, and as part of method requirement for reference parameters and reference method return
2215 values, as follows:

- 2216 • The constraint shall state the adaptation that the reference property refers to. It is required that
2217 the referenced adaptation is defined in the subject profile.
- 2218 • The referenced adaptation shall be compatible with the class that is referenced by the reference
2219 property, parameter or return value in the adapted class; for details, see 7.13.2.1.

- 2220 • Profiles may constrain the multiplicities of references in association adaptations. These
2221 multiplicities shall be the same as or narrower than the most narrow multiplicity defined in the
2222 adapted class and in any base adaptation and its adapted class.

2223 As a consequence of the first rule, it is not possible that a subject profile can define an association
2224 adaptation that references an adaptation defined in a referencing profile because the referencing profile
2225 and its adaptation are not known in the subject profile. This situation can be solved by defining the
2226 associated adaptation directly in the subject profile, and base the adaptation in the referencing profile on
2227 the new adaptation in the referenced profile. In most cases the adaptation in the subject profile can be
2228 stated as a trivial class adaptation (see 7.13.6) which causes only minimal modeling effort. The
2229 advantage of this approach is that the adaptation dependencies are explicitly defined and it is not left to
2230 the implementer to figure out which adaptation in a referenced profile actually referenced.

2231 For example, consider an Example Fan profile modeling a relationship between a fan and the system that
2232 contains the fan by means of the CIM_SystemDevice association. That profile would model a Fan
2233 adaptation of the CIM_Fan class, a (trivial) FanSystem adaptation of the CIM_System class, and a
2234 FanInSystem adaptation of the CIM_SystemDevice association that references the Fan and the
2235 FanSystem adaptations.

2236 NOTE Version 1.0 of this guide does not clearly separate adaptations (which were called "profile classes" – see
2237 7.13.1) and CIM classes. DMTF profile class diagrams in component profiles conforming to version 1.0 of
2238 this guide frequently depict "profile classes" from a referencing profile and annotate it with the phrase "See
2239 referencing profile". Implementers of such profiles in context of a particular referencing profile now need to
2240 determine which "profile class" in the referencing profile is actually referenced. This is a trivial task if only
2241 one "profile class" for the respective CIM class is defined in the referencing profile, but causes ambiguities
2242 if more than one "profile class" of that CIM class is defined, and the association reference is not further
2243 constrained to reference a particular "profile class".

2244 7.13.2.10.3 Value constrains through format specifications

2245 Profiles may specify a mechanism that conveys the format for the values of string-typed properties,
2246 method parameters and method return values.

2247 For some of the format specification mechanisms that a profile may apply, this guide defines rules that
2248 govern the application of these mechanisms, as follows:

- 2249 • If a profile uses regular expressions to define the format, the regular expressions shall conform
2250 to the syntax defined in Annex B.
- 2251 • If a profile uses a grammar to define the format, the grammar shall be stated in ABNF (see
2252 [RFC5234](#)). A profile may define extensions and modifications to ABNF; if so, these shall be
2253 documented in the profile.

2254 NOTE The specification of units is established in schema definitions through the use of the PUNIT or the
2255 ISPUNIT qualifiers.

2256 7.13.2.10.4 Property non-Null value constraint implied by the requirement level

2257 If a property is required by a subject profile with either the mandatory requirement level, or with the
2258 conditional or conditional exclusive requirement level and the condition being True, the value Null is not
2259 admissible for the property (see 9.3.2).

2260 Profiles may exempt this rule and allow Null as an admissible value; however, such exemptions should be
2261 specified separately for each property where the value Null is admissible.

2262 A respective value constraint is not implied for the use of Null as an input value; however, specific input
2263 value requirements may be defined (see 7.13.2.11).

2264 7.13.2.11 Input value requirements**2265 7.13.2.11.1 General**

2266 Input value requirements are requirements for the implementation of particular input values.

2267 An input value requirement requires that the input value must be implemented, that is, be accepted when
2268 provided as input, and not be rejected for the reason of not being implemented; however, a rejection for
2269 other reasons is not prohibited. Input value requirements may be specified for specific values of method
2270 input parameters, and — with respect to the initialization or modification of property values — for specific
2271 property values as part of property requirements in adaptations.

2272 **NOTE** Value requirements for output values can only be specified by means of value constraints (see 7.13.2.10).
2273 Recall that property values are required to represent the state of the managed environment represented by
2274 the adaptation instance (see 7.13.2.8.5), and that method return values and method output parameter
2275 values are required to represent the outcome of the method execution (see 7.13.3.2.2 and 7.13.3.2.3).

2276 7.13.2.11.2 Property initialization value requirement

2277 Property initialization value requirements are input value requirements that may be specified with property
2278 requirements in the definition of adaptations with an implementation type (see 7.13.2.5) of "instantiated".
2279 Property initialization input value requirements shall not be specified in the definition of adaptations with
2280 other implementation types.

2281 Each property initialization value requirement shall be designated with a requirement level that
2282 determines the requirement for implementing the value as property initialization value.

2283 A property initialization value requirement states that a specific input value for a property shall be
2284 implemented, that is, be accepted when provided through any operation or method that creates instances
2285 of the adaptation (such as the CreateInstance() operation defined in [DSP0223](#), or as methods that take
2286 an embedded adaptation instance as input). A property initialization value requirement is only applicable if
2287 such operations or methods are implemented.

2288 Implementing a property initialization value does not preclude its rejection for reasons other than not
2289 being implemented, such as that the state of the managed environment does not currently allow the
2290 instance creation request to be executed with the given input instance.

2291 Property initialization value requirements shall only be specified for values that are within the value
2292 constraints established for the property (see 7.13.2.10). In addition, creation methods or operations may
2293 define separate constraints that limit their specific sets of acceptable values beyond those defined by
2294 property constraints.

2295 If for a possible value no property initialization value requirement is specified, the implementation may
2296 either accept or reject that value when provided as initialization value.

2297 The semantics of the creation operation or method may define how initialization values are processed.
2298 Defining semantics includes the possibility that an initialization value is only considered a hint, such that
2299 the value resulting from the instance creation differs from the provided initialization value. If no specific
2300 semantics are defined, the default shall be that the initialization value is carried over unmodified into the
2301 new instance.

2302 7.13.2.11.3 Property modification value requirement

2303 Property modification value requirements are input value requirements that may be specified with
2304 property requirements in the definition of adaptations with an implementation type (see 7.13.2.5) of
2305 "instantiated". Property modification value requirements shall not be specified in the definition of
2306 adaptations with other implementation types.

- 2307 Each property modification value requirement shall be designated with a requirement level that
2308 determines the requirement for implementing the value as property modification value.
- 2309 A property modification value requirement states that a specific value for a property must be
2310 implemented, that is, be accepted when provided through any operation or method that modifies
2311 instances of the adaptation (such as the ModifyInstance() operation defined in [DSP0223](#), or as methods
2312 that take an embedded adaptation instance as input). A property modification value requirement is only
2313 applicable if such operations or methods are implemented.
- 2314 Implementing a property modification value does not preclude its rejection for reasons other than not
2315 being implemented, such as that the state of the managed environment does not currently allow the
2316 instance modification request to be executed with the given input instance.
- 2317 Property modification value requirements shall only be specified for values that are within the value
2318 constraints established for the property (see 7.13.2.10). In addition, modification methods or operations
2319 may define separate constraints that limit their specific sets of acceptable values beyond those defined by
2320 property constraints.
- 2321 If for a possible value no property modification value requirement is specified, the implementation may
2322 either accept or reject that value when provided as modification value.
- 2323 The semantics of the modification operation or method may define how modification values are
2324 processed. Defining semantics includes the possibility that a modification value is only considered a hint,
2325 such that the value resulting from the instance modification differs from the provided modification value. If
2326 no specific semantics is defined, the default shall be that the modification value is carried over unmodified
2327 into the target instance.
- 2328 **7.13.2.11.4 Input parameter value requirement**
- 2329 Input parameter value requirements are input value requirements that may be specified for input
2330 parameters as part of method requirements in adaptation definitions. Value requirements shall not be
2331 specified for output parameters (for reasons detailed in 7.13.2.11.1).
- 2332 Each input parameter value requirement shall be designated with a requirement level that determines the
2333 requirement for implementing the value as input parameter value.
- 2334 An input parameter value requirement states that a specific value for an input parameter shall be
2335 implemented, that is, be accepted when provided as actual value in a method invocation.
- 2336 Implementing an input parameter value does not preclude its rejection for reasons other than not being
2337 implemented, such as that the state of the managed environment does not currently allow the method
2338 execution request to be executed with the given set of input parameter values.
- 2339 Input parameter value requirements shall only be specified for values that are within the value constraints
2340 established for the input parameter (see 7.13.2.10).
- 2341 If for a particular parameter no parameter input value requirement is specified, the implementation
2342 behavior with respect to accepting input values for that parameter is undefined.
- 2343 If for a possible value no input parameter value requirement is specified, the implementation behavior
2344 with respect to accepting that value as input is undefined.
- 2345 **7.13.3 Requirements for definitions of adaptations of ordinary classes and associations**
- 2346 **7.13.3.1 General**
- 2347 Subclause 7.13.3 defines requirements for the definition of adaptations of ordinary classes and for the
2348 definition of adaptations of associations. These requirements apply in addition to the requirements
2349 defined in 7.13.2 for the definition of adaptations of all kinds of classes.

2350 7.13.3.2 Definition of method requirements**2351 7.13.3.2.1 General**

2352 For each class adaptation of ordinary classes or associations it defines, a profile may define method
2353 requirements for methods that are exposed by the adapted class.

2354 Each method requirement shall be designated with a requirement level that determines the requirement
2355 for implementing the method.

2356 For the definition of requirements for parameters and method return values the requirements of 7.13.2.10
2357 apply.

2358 Profiles shall not define method requirements for methods that are marked as deprecated in the schema
2359 definition of the adapted class, except within revisions of existing profiles that retain a method
2360 requirement for a method that was marked as deprecated in a subsequent version of the schema after
2361 the original version of the profile was released.

2362 Note that the Required qualifier for methods means that the method return values must not be Null; this
2363 does not imply a requirement to implement the method.

2364 As part of a method requirement, a profile shall state requirements for all method parameters, each time
2365 repeating (from the schema definition of the adapted class) the effective values of the In and Out
2366 qualifiers and — if present — that of the Required qualifier.

2367 NOTE This requirement aims at relieving profile consumers from analyzing the schema for respective
2368 requirements.

2369 In addition, for each input parameter, input value requirements may be specified; for details, see
2370 7.13.2.11.4.

2371 Profiles should not replicate requirements from the schema or from base profiles unless needed for
2372 establishing additional requirements of the subject profile.

2373 7.13.3.2.2 Requirements for the specification of constraints on methods and their parameters

2374 The base set of permissible parameter and method return values is defined in the schema definition of
2375 the adapted class and/or its superclasses; as a matter of principle, schema definitions cannot be
2376 extended by profiles.

2377 A profile may specify constraints and requirements for methods and their parameters (including method
2378 return values) as part of the method requirements.

2379 Any such constraints and requirements shall apply in addition to, but shall not contradict, any constraints
2380 and requirements defined in the adapted class, its superclasses, and in base adaptations.

2381 Different rules are established for the definition of such constraints for output parameters and method
2382 return values, as opposed to those for input parameters:

- 2383 • For output parameters and method return values, profiles shall not specify method requirements
2384 that extend the set of permissible values as constrained in base adaptations, but may specify
2385 method requirements that further constrain that set. This rule ensures that the value set cannot
2386 be extended, and a client of a base adaptation never receives output values outside of the
2387 constraints established by base adaptations, even if an adaptation based on the base
2388 adaptation is actually implemented.
- 2389 • For input parameters, profiles shall not specify method requirements that further constrain the
2390 set of permissible input values as constrained in base adaptations, but may specify method
2391 requirements that extend that set. This rule ensures that the permissible input value set cannot

2392 be reduced, and conforming input values supplied by a client of a base adaptation are always to
2393 be accepted by the profile implementation, even if actually a derived adaptation is implemented.

2394 However, note that this rule does not prohibit constraining the base set of permissible input
2395 values defined by the *schema definition* of the adapted class and/or its superclasses. In other
2396 words, a profile may specify method requirements constraining the base set of permissible input
2397 values for a property as established by the schema definition of the adapted class and/or its
2398 superclasses, such that only a smaller set of values is required to be accepted by a profile
2399 implementation. This applies likewise for property values of adaptation instances that are
2400 required as input value. Particularly, in adaptations modeling acceptable input parameter
2401 values, a profile may reduce the set of properties and their supported value ranges with respect
2402 to those defined by the adapted class and/or its superclasses, such that only the properties and
2403 value ranges established by the profile are required to be accepted by a profile implementation.

2404 Profiles may specify the semantics of specific values of method input parameters (including
2405 values of properties in input instances) within the constraints already defined by the schema
2406 definition and base profiles. For example, for a method defined for the purpose of modifying an
2407 adaptation instance with an instance input parameter (that may or may not be an embedded
2408 instance), a profile may define that the value Null for properties in the input instance means not
2409 to change the value in the target instance.

2410 NOTE This redefinition of the meaning of specific values is not generally possible for *instance*
2411 *modification operations* (see 7.13.3.3.4), because their semantics are established by the
2412 defining operations specification and usually require that all values from the input instance are
2413 to be carried over as given into the target instance. For that reason it might occasionally be
2414 advantageous to define methods with similar semantics as the creation and modification
2415 operations, but with more flexibility with respect to interpreting client provided input values,
2416 including the case to interpret values of certain input parameters as patterns or as suggestions,
2417 but not as strict value requirements.

2418 In any case the schema definition of the adapted class, its superclasses, or any base adaptation may
2419 specify rules that establish limitations for the definition of such constraints in general, or under certain
2420 conditions.

2421 NOTE These rules enforce polymorphic behavior of methods with respect to the method requirements defined in
2422 profiles. However, they do not enforce polymorphic behavior of methods with respect to the base set of
2423 permissible parameter value defined by the schema. This approach addresses the situation that schema
2424 definitions frequently define large value sets for input parameters with the intention that implementations
2425 constrain that value set to those values supportable by the implementation. Likewise, in the case where
2426 the input parameter is defined to be an (embedded) instance, that needs to be constrainable to instances
2427 of subclasses, to instances only containing values for a subset of the defined properties, and/or to
2428 instances where for specific properties the value set is constrained.

2429 7.13.3.2.3 Management domain context of methods

2430 As part of every method requirement, a profile shall specify the method semantics with respect to the
2431 managed environment, unless these are already precisely defined by a base adaptation or by the schema
2432 definition of an adapted class. The description may adopt text from the schema description of the method,
2433 but the text shall be rephrased as standard English text.

2434 In the schema, method semantics are typically only described with respect to the CIM model. The
2435 semantics described in the profile shall not contradict those defined in the schema. In addition — because
2436 profiles need to describe the relationship between the CIM model and the managed environment
2437 represented by that CIM model — in profiles it is generally not sufficient to describe only the expected
2438 state of the CIM model after the method execution completes. Instead, profiles should detail the required
2439 changes on managed objects in the managed environment that cause corresponding changes in the CIM
2440 instances that represent the managed objects.

2441 For example, if an Example Fan profile requires that a fan is active as an effect of executing the
2442 RequestStateChange() method on the instance of the Fan adaptation representing the fan if the value of

2443 the RequestedState parameter is 2 (Enabled), that profile shall explicitly state as part of the required
 2444 method semantics that the represented fan shall be activated, and not just that the value of the
 2445 EnabledState property in the representing Fan instance shall be 2 (Enabled). The purpose of this
 2446 requirement is to precisely instruct the implementer about the desired behavior in the managed
 2447 environment, and not just about expected changes in the model representation of the managed
 2448 environment. Of course, in addition the property requirements for the EnabledState property of the Fan
 2449 adaptation need to separately state that the value shall be 2 (Enabled) if and only if the fan is active. For
 2450 further rationale, see 6.6.3.

2451 **7.13.3.2.4 Specification of the reporting of method errors**

2452 The rules for the specification of reporting of operation errors defined in 7.13.3.3.6 shall be applied.

2453 **7.13.3.3 Definition of operation requirements**

2454 **7.13.3.3.1 Operations specification**

2455 Profiles shall select [DSP0223](#) as the operations specification, and define their operation requirements
 2456 with respect to operations defined in [DSP0223](#).

2457 NOTE This requirement was introduced in version 1.1 of this guide in order to foster more protocol independence
 2458 in profiles.

2459 **7.13.3.3.2 General**

2460 For each adaptation it defines, a profile shall define operation requirements. The operation requirements
 2461 shall be stated with respect to the operations defined in [DSP0223](#).

2462 Each operation requirement shall be designated with a requirement level that determines the requirement
 2463 for implementing the operation.

2464 Profiles shall not define operation requirements for the operation(s) defined by the operations
 2465 specification that request the execution of methods (such as the InvokeMethod() operation defined in
 2466 [DSP0223](#)); instead, such operations are implicitly required if the profile defines any method requirements
 2467 (see 7.13.3.2).

2468 **7.13.3.3.3 Specification of operation requirements for instance creation operations**

2469 The operations specifications (see 7.13.3.3.1) allow the creation of CIM instances based on input CIM
 2470 instances provided by clients. In general, it is not required that values are provided in the input CIM
 2471 instance for all properties; however, profiles may specify requirements for implementing specific
 2472 initialization values (see 7.13.2.11.2).

2473 As part of operation requirements for instance creation operations, profiles may specify

- 2474 • preconditions that an input value is required to be provided in the input instance, or that an input
 2475 value is not permitted to be provided in the input instance; such preconditions may be tied to
 2476 other conditions specified by the profile.

2477 NOTE Operations specification define that provided values need to be reflected in the created
 2478 instance, and how values of properties for which the input instance does not exhibit a value are
 2479 to be determined for the created instance. For that reason the reinterpretation of specific values
 2480 of input properties that is possible for input parameters of methods (see 7.13.3.2.2) is not
 2481 admissible for operations.

- 2482 • property value initialization constraints unless such are established by the schema (for example,
 2483 by means such as the PropertyConstraint qualifier — see [DSP0004](#)).

- 2484 • the effects of the operation with respect to the managed object to be created in (or to be added
 2485 to) the managed environment.

- 2486 NOTE An operations specification can specify semantics for the instance creation operations with
2487 respect to the resulting new instance.
- 2488
- error reporting requirements as detailed in 7.13.3.3.6.
- 2489 The specification of profile requirements for accepting input values for key properties in input instances
2490 for instance creation operations is not recommended, except for reference properties. An implementation
2491 is free to ignore any client provided value for a key property, except those for key reference properties.
2492 Clients should abstain from providing values for key properties other than reference properties in input
2493 instances for instance creation operations.
- 2494 NOTE The reason behind this requirement is that the implementation is responsible for ensuring the uniqueness
2495 of instances. If clients were allowed to dictate key property values, clashes of instance creation requests
2496 from independent clients would be predestined.
- 2497 For the creation of CIM instances it is of overriding importance that the lifecycle of a CIM instance is
2498 directly tied to the existence of a managed object in the managed environment that is represented by the
2499 CIM instance; see 6.6.2. A CIM instance can only be created if a respective managed object can be
2500 created (or added to the managed environment) such that the new CIM instance representing that
2501 managed object conforms with all values given by the input CIM instance with initialization constraints
2502 applied; for implementation requirements on instance creation operations, see 9.3.3.2.2.
- 2503 **7.13.3.3.4 Specification of operations requirements for instance modification operations**
- 2504 The operations specifications (see 7.13.3.3.1) allow modification of some or all property values of an
2505 instance. An operations specification also can specify semantics for the instance modification operations
2506 with respect to the resulting modified instance. Profiles may specify requirements for implementing
2507 specific modification values (see 7.13.2.11.3).
- 2508 As part of operation requirements for instance modification operations, profiles may specify
- designations for specific properties to be either modifiable or non-modifiable.
 - Key properties are non-modifiable and shall not be designated as modifiable
 - Designations already specified in base adaptations should not be repeated or changed
 - Through such designations profiles may limit the effects of modification operations such that only the values of certain properties are affected.
 - preconditions that an input value is required to be provided in the input instance, or that an input value is not permitted to be provided in the input instance; such preconditions may be tied to other conditions specified by the profile.
- 2517 NOTE Operations specification define that provided values need to be reflected in the created
2518 instance, and how values of properties for which the input instance does not exhibit a value are
2519 to be determined for the created instance. For that reason the reinterpretation of specific values
2520 of input properties that is possible for input parameters of methods (see 7.13.3.2.2) is not
2521 admissible for operations.
- the effect of property modifications with respect to the managed object to be modified in the managed environment unless these are apparent (for example by respective mappings of specific property values to respective states of the managed object)
- 2525 NOTE An operations specification can specify semantics for the instance modification operations with
2526 respect to the resulting modified target instance.
- error reporting requirements as detailed in 7.13.3.3.6.
- 2528 For the modification of CIM instances it is of overriding importance that a CIM instance is the
2529 representation of (an aspect of) a managed object in the managed environment; see 6.6.2. A CIM
2530 instance can only be modified if the managed object represented by that CIM instance can be modified
2531 such that the CIM instance representing that modified managed object conforms with all values given by

2532 the input CIM instance; for implementation requirements on instance modification operations, see
2533 9.3.3.2.3.

2534 **7.13.3.3.5 Specification of operation requirements for deprecated operations**

2535 Profiles shall not define operation requirements for operations that are marked as deprecated in the
2536 operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1), except within revisions of existing profiles that retain an
2537 operation requirement for an operation that was marked as deprecated in the operations specification
2538 after the original version of the profile was released.

2539 **7.13.3.3.6 Specification of the reporting of operation errors**

2540 The operation requirements and method requirements specified by a profile should contain error reporting
2541 requirements.

2542 Each error reporting requirement shall address a particular error situation.

2543 Each error reporting requirement shall be designated with a requirement level that determines the
2544 requirement for implementing the error reporting requirement as part of implementing the method or
2545 operation.

2546 Because in profiles error reporting requirements are a part of operation requirements or method
2547 requirements, each error reporting requirement specified in a profile shall be related to an error reporting
2548 requirement specified by the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1) as part of the definition of the
2549 operation. This also applies for method requirements if the method invocations are initiated through an
2550 operation; otherwise, error reporting requirements for methods shall be specified in context of an error
2551 reporting requirement established by the operations specification for method invocations.

2552 The error situations addressed by error reporting requirements can overlap. For example, if an instance is
2553 not accessible, that may be caused by security reasons, by technical reasons or by other kinds of failures.
2554 Profiles may specify error reporting requirements with a relative order to each other, such that a particular
2555 error reporting requirement applies before other error reporting requirements. For example, in the case
2556 where an instance is not accessible for several reasons such as security reasons and several technical
2557 reasons, a profile could state that the error reporting requirement for reporting the security reason is to be
2558 applied before any other error reporting requirement.

2559 Note that the operations specification may already have established a relative order among the error
2560 reporting requirements that it specifies. In this case, if the profile establishes a order among the profile
2561 specified error reporting requirements, that shall be in compliance with the order specified by the
2562 operations specification.

2563 Profile should define each error reporting requirement through one or more standard messages, as
2564 follows:

- 2565 • If the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1) defines error reporting requirements by means of
2566 standard messages, each error reporting requirement shall reference a standard error message
2567 (that is, a standard message defined in a [DSP0228](#) conformant message registry with a type of
2568 "ERROR") required by the operations specification for the subject operation that addresses the
2569 error situation to be reported.
- 2570 • If the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1) defines error reporting requirements by means of
2571 CIM status codes, each error reporting requirement shall reference a standard error message
2572 defined in [DSP8016](#) that is compatible to a CIM status code required by the operations
2573 specification that is applicable in the error situation to be reported. A compatible standard error
2574 message shall exhibit — through the value of the CIMSTATUSCODE element — a CIM status
2575 code that applies in the error situation, and shall itself be applicable in the error situation to be
2576 reported.

- 2577 • In cases where a mapping of CIM status codes to messages defined in [DSP8016](#) is not
2578 possible, an error reporting requirements may directly reference the CIM status code instead of
2579 a standard error message.
 - 2580 • In addition, in all previous cases, an error reporting requirement may refer to one or more
2581 additional standard error messages that apply in the error situation to be reported. These
2582 messages are typically defined in a message registry that is separate from that used by the
2583 operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1) and that contains definitions of messages that are
2584 more specific with respect to the domain addressed by the profile.
 - 2585 • Profiles may provide additional descriptions as part of error reporting requirements that detail
2586 the error situation in the context of which an error reporting requirement applies with respect to
2587 the management domain addressed by the profile. However, such additional descriptions are to
2588 be understood as implementation hints as to when — with respect to the management
2589 domain — an error reporting requirement applies. The additional descriptions shall not be
2590 understood as a constraint on the error situation that is described by the standard error
2591 messages and CIM status codes. Particularly, clients receiving an error indicator in the form of a
2592 set of standard error messages and a CIM status code shall only rely on the description
2593 provided directly through these elements. Clients shall not make assumptions based on the
2594 additional descriptions provided in profiles, other than that these describe single potentially
2595 possible error situations out of the typically much larger set described by the standard error
2596 messages and the CIM status code.
- 2597 NOTE The implementation requirements resulting from error reporting requirements are detailed in 9.3.3.4.

2598 **7.13.3.3.7 Operation requirements related to associations**

- 2599 A profile shall define operation requirements for operations that enable association traversal as part of
2600 adaptations of classes that are referenced by association adaptations; typically such classes are ordinary
2601 classes.
- 2602 The requirements for association traversal operations with respect to a particular association adaptation
2603 shall be specified separately as part of each referenced adaptation.
- 2604 The requirements for association traversal operations of a particular adaptation of a class referenced by
2605 one or more association adaptations may be specified separately for each referencing association
2606 adaptation.
- 2607 For example, consider a profile defines a System adaptation of the CIM_System class, a Device
2608 adaptation of the CIM_LogicalDevice class, and a SystemDevice adaptation of the CIM_SystemDevice
2609 association associating the System adaptation and the Device adaptation. If the association traversal
2610 operation requirements specified on the System adaptation with respect to the SystemDevice association
2611 may differ from those specified on the Device adaptation, they need to be separately specified.
- 2612 Furthermore, if the profile had also defined a SystemPackaging adaptation of the CIM_SystemPackaging
2613 class, and if the association traversal operation requirements specified on the System adaptation
2614 targeting the Device adaptation through the SystemPackaging adaptation differ from those through the
2615 SystemDevice association adaptation, they need to be separately specified as well.
- 2616 There is no implied requirement for an association adaptation to be implemented if one or more of the
2617 referenced adaptations are implemented. Similarly, the implementation of referenced adaptations is not
2618 implicitly required if an association adaptation is implemented. For that reason, profiles should ensure that
2619 all adaptations required to express a certain relationship are required as a whole; the preferred modeling
2620 approach in this case are features (see 7.15).
- 2621 For example, extending the previously described situation with a mandatory System adaptation
2622 associated via a SystemDependency association adaptation to a Device adaptation, a profile should
2623 ensure that if the Device adaptation is implemented, then the SystemDevice adaptation is required to be
2624 implemented as well. For example, this could be achieved by defining the SystemDevice adaptation with

2625 the conditional exclusive requirement level, with the condition stating that the optional Device adaptation
2626 is implemented. Another more explicit approach could be defining an optional DevicesExposed feature,
2627 and define both the SystemDevice and the Device adaptations as conditional exclusive, with a feature
2628 implementation condition on the DevicesExposed feature.

2629 **7.13.3.3.8 Management domain context for operations**

2630 For write operations (for example, the ModifyInstance() operation defined in [DSP0223](#)), it is generally not
2631 sufficient to only describe the expected state of CIM instances after the operation execution completes.
2632 Instead, profiles should detail the required changes on managed objects in the managed environment
2633 that cause corresponding changes in the CIM instances that represent the affected managed objects.

2634 For example, if an Example Fan profile requires that a fan is active as an effect of executing the
2635 ModifyInstance() operation, that profile shall explicitly state as part of the required operation semantics
2636 that the identified fan shall be activated if the value of the EnabledState property in the input instance is
2637 2 (Enabled), instead of repeating requirements from the operations specification (such as that the
2638 instance identified by the input instance shall adopt the values from the input instance) and/or the
2639 schema. The purpose of this requirement is to precisely instruct implementers about the desired behavior
2640 in the managed environment, and not just about expected changes in the model representation of the
2641 managed environment. Of course, the property requirements for the EnabledState property of the Fan
2642 adaptation need to separately state that the value shall be 2 (Enabled) if and only if the fan is active. For
2643 further rationale, see 6.6.3.

2644 **7.13.3.4 Definition of instance requirements**

2645 An instance requirement defines how (and in some cases also under which conditions) managed objects
2646 are to be represented by adaptation instances.

2647 The definition of an adaptation in a profile models a particular managed object type or an aspect thereof;
2648 see 7.13.2.2. The implementation selects managed objects for representation. The definition of the
2649 adaptation implies the instance requirement to represent the selected managed objects as respective
2650 adaptation instances; profiles are not required to restate this implied instance requirement.

2651 In addition, profiles may define the conditions in the managed environment that require the exposure of
2652 adaptation instances in namespaces; however, profiles should exercise care when stating such instance
2653 requirements in order to avoid requirements that cannot be satisfied.

2654 For example, in the context of an Example Fan profile, consider an instance requirement phrased as
2655 follows: "Each fan shall be represented by a Fan instance." (where "fan" refers to fans in managed
2656 environments, and "Fan" refers to the Fan adaptation defined in that Example Fan profile). It is possible
2657 that some fans in the managed environment do not exhibit a management instrumentation that would
2658 enable a profile implementation to actually discover and control those fans. In these cases a profile
2659 implementation would not be able to comply with the specified instance requirement, because it can
2660 neither detect nor manage those fans without management instrumentation.

2661 **7.13.3.5 Metric requirements**

2662 Profiles may define metric requirements. Metric requirements shall be stated as part of class adaptations.
2663 These adaptations may be based on adaptations defined in the same profile, or in other profiles such as
2664 the *Base Metrics Profile* (see [DSP1053](#)).

2665 The metric requirements shall be based on referenced metric definitions that are defined in metric
2666 registries. Besides formal requirements for the specification of metric definitions, [DSP8020](#) also defines
2667 requirements for the implementation of metrics. These implementation requirements apply for profile
2668 implementations if a profile defines metric requirements by referencing metric definitions in metric
2669 registries that are compliant with [DSP8020](#).

2670 If necessary, as part of their metric requirements within adaptations profiles may amend the referenced
 2671 metric definitions from metric registries. For example, such amendments may be necessary in order to
 2672 refine the metric semantics and establish the context with the incorporating adaptation. In particular, this
 2673 is required in the context of more generically defined metrics in metric registries. On the other hand,
 2674 specific metric definitions in metric registries in many cases already define all necessary implementation
 2675 requirements, such that referencing the registry-based definition along with the implementation
 2676 requirements imposed by [DSP8020](#) are sufficient for the purposes of the subject profile.

2677 Profiles shall apply one of the following approaches for the definition of metric requirements:

- 2678 • Managed object only (requires [DSP1053](#), with either direct or indirect reference)

2679 With this approach, the metric requirements are defined as part of an adaptation that models
 2680 the managed object type for which the metric applies, by

- 2681 – basing that adaptation on the MonitoredElement adaptation defined in the Base Metrics
 2682 profile (see [DSP1053](#)), and
- 2683 – referencing in the same adaptation one or more metrics defined in a metric registry.

2684 This is the most compact approach because most of the metric related implementation
 2685 requirements are implied from [DSP1053](#). Specifically, the MonitoredElement adaptation from
 2686 the Base Metrics profile implies implementation requirements for other adaptations defined in
 2687 the Base Metrics profile, such as the BaseMetricDefinition adaptation, the BaseMetricValue
 2688 adaptation, and their relationships. The adaptations from the Base Metrics profile also define
 2689 how requirements from the metric definition in the metric registry apply in their context.

- 2690 • Managed object and metric definition (requires [DSP1053](#), with either direct or indirect reference)

2691 With this approach, the metric requirements are defined as part of a metric adaptation (an
 2692 adaptation of the CIM_BaseMetricDefinition class or a subclass of that) by

- 2693 – basing that adaptation on the BaseMetricDefinition adaptation or on the
 2694 AggregationMetricDefinition adaptation defined in the Base Metrics profile (see [DSP1053](#)),
- 2695 – referencing in the same adaptation one or more metric definitions defined in a metric
 2696 registry (see [DSP8020](#) for requirements on the specification of metric registries and their
 2697 use), and
- 2698 – defining one or more adaptations based on the MonitoredElement adaptation defined in the
 2699 Base Metrics profile modeling the entities for which the metrics apply, along with related
 2700 association adaptations based on the MetricDefForME adaptation defined in the Base
 2701 Metric profile that relate the managed elements with their metric definitions.

2702 This is a less compact, but more flexible, approach. In addition to its own requirements, the
 2703 BaseMetricDefinition adaptation from the Base Metrics profile implies additional implementation
 2704 requirements for related adaptations defined in the Base Metrics profile, such as the
 2705 BaseMetricValue adaptation and its relationships. However, with this approach the subject
 2706 profile is required to establish the context to one or more managed elements through its
 2707 adaptations based of the MetricDefForME adaptation. Again, the adaptations from the Base
 2708 Metrics profile also define how requirements from the metric definition in the metric registry
 2709 apply in their context.

- 2710 • Complete approach ([DSP1053](#) not required, but possible)

2711 With this approach, the subject profile defines all aspects of the metric requirements through
 2712 one or more adaptations, and with or without referencing other profiles. At least one the metric
 2713 related adaptations is required to be based on a metric definition in a metric registry, and
 2714 establish the usage context of that registry-based metric definition for the modeled managed
 2715 object types.

2716 This is the most flexible approach. It does not require referencing [DSP1053](#), but requires the
2717 most extensive definitions in the subject profile. The subject profile may or may not define its
2718 metric-related adaptations based on adaptations defined in [DSP1053](#) or in other profiles. If so,
2719 then the requirements of the base adaptations are imposed as usual. If not, then the subject
2720 profile itself must define all metric-related requirements such as interpretation rules or value
2721 constraints of certain metric-related properties, or as relationships between metric-related
2722 adaptations.

2723 **7.13.3.6 Concurrency requirements**

2724 Each profile should define concurrency requirements with regard to instances of adaptations.

2725 For example, a profile defining requirements for a method or operation may require exclusive access to a
2726 subset of the managed environment such that interference from other activities performed on that subset
2727 are serialized. However, care should be exercised in establishing such requirements, because they might
2728 reduce the set of managed environments for which the profile can be implemented.

2729 **7.13.3.7 ACID requirements**

2730 Profile authors should be aware that protocols, WBEM server infrastructure, and adaptation
2731 implementations affect the behavior with respect to ACID properties. A profile may define ACID
2732 requirements for operations and methods specified by the profile; if specified, ACID requirements shall be
2733 defined at the level of the profile-defined interface between a WBEM client (or a WBEM listener) and a
2734 WBEM server. Profile-defined ACID requirements shall be stated in a protocol-agnostic manner.

2735 NOTE ACID properties for operations and methods are defined in operations specifications (see 7.13.3.3.1).

2736 If profiles define ACID requirements, these shall not contradict other specification rules established by this
2737 guide, such as requirements for the specification of instance requirements (see 7.13.3.4) or that for the
2738 specification of operations requirements (see 7.13.3.3).

2739 **7.13.4 Requirements for the definition of indication adaptations**

2740 **7.13.4.1 General**

2741 The requirements defined this subclause apply in addition to the requirements defined in 7.13.2 for the
2742 definition of adaptations of all kinds of classes.

2743 The approach detailed in this subclause aims at relieving profiles that define indications from having to
2744 define many of the infrastructure elements related to indications, such as indication filters and filter
2745 collections. This is because such infrastructure elements are already implied by definitions of [DSP1054](#).
2746 Particularly in the case of alert indications, the specification effort in profiles is typically reduced to just
2747 define an adaptation based on the AlertIndication adaptation defined [DSP1054](#), along with a reference to
2748 an alert message for each event that is to be reported.

2749 A profile that defines indications may reference [DSP1054](#); if a profile references [DSP1054](#), it shall comply
2750 with the requirements defined in [DSP1054](#) for referencing profiles. A profile referencing [DSP1054](#) may
2751 define its indication adaptations based on those defined in [DSP1054](#). As usual, the "based on"
2752 relationship to basic indication adaptations defined in [DSP1054](#) may be indirect, with intermediate other
2753 base adaptations. In either case, the requirements of the base indication adaptation defined in [DSP1054](#)
2754 implicitly applies, including the requirements for related indication filters and filter collections.

2755 An alert indication adaptation that is defined based on the AlertIndication adaptation defined in [DSP1054](#)
2756 may reference alert messages defined in a message registry. For each message reference, the alert
2757 indication adaptation shall state the message registry reference (see 7.12) referring to the defining
2758 message registry, and uniquely identify the message by stating its message id. The message id is the
2759 concatenation of the value of the PREFIX attribute and the SEQUENCE_NUMBER attribute from the

2760 MESSAGE_ID element that defines the alert message within the message registry. Furthermore, the alert
2761 indication adaptation shall specify how the definitions of the referenced alert messages apply, unless
2762 such information is already sufficiently provided by the definition of the AlertIndication adaptation defined
2763 in [DSP1054](#), by the respective alert message definitions, by the Message Registry XML Schema
2764 Specification (see [DSP8020](#)), or by a combination of these definitions. For rules on how to conform with
2765 these requirements in profile specification documents, see 10.4.7.4.3.

2766 **7.13.4.2 Indication-generation requirements**

2767 For each indication adaptation one or more indication-generation requirements shall be defined. Each
2768 indication-generation requirement shall express the situation that causes the indication to be generated;
2769 in most situations such descriptions just refer the event reported by the indication, but additional
2770 constraints may apply.

2771 The basic indication adaptations defined in [DSP1054](#) already define indication-generation requirements.
2772 As with any requirement defined by a base adaptation, the indication-generation requirements defined by
2773 base indication adaptations (such as those defined in [DSP1054](#)) implicitly apply in context derived
2774 indication adaptations; however, if needed, a derived indication adaptation may refine the indication-
2775 generation requirements of its base indication adaptation(s).

2776 **7.13.5 Abstract class adaptation**

2777 Abstract class adaptations are class adaptations with an implementation type of "abstract". Any class that
2778 is not an abstract class adaptation is termed a concrete class adaptation.

2779 One purpose of abstract class adaptations is to serve as a common endpoint for generic association
2780 adaptations, such that the relationship applies to any class adaptation based on the abstract class
2781 adaptation and the definition of specific association adaptations for every possible endpoint can be
2782 avoided.

2783 Another purpose of abstract class adaptations is grouping the common requirements of other class
2784 adaptations. Instead of repeating the common requirements in each specific class adaptation the
2785 common requirements are specified in an abstract class adaptation, and each specific class adaptation is
2786 based on that abstract class adaptation.

2787 Abstract class adaptations are not directly implemented; instead, their requirements are propagated into
2788 class adaptations that are based on them. For details, see clause 9.

2789 Each class adaptation adapting an abstract class from a schema shall be designated as an abstract class
2790 adaptation, with one exception:

2791 A profile may define a concrete (non-abstract) adaptation of an abstract class, if in addition it states a
2792 concrete class derived from the adapted class that shall be implemented if the profile implementation
2793 does not need a more specific derived class. For example, a profile may define an XxxComponent
2794 adaptation of the (abstract) CIM_Component class and state that the CIM_ConcreteComponent
2795 class shall be implemented if the implementation does not require a more specific association
2796 derived from CIM_Component. This specification approach enables implementations to define their
2797 own implementation classes derived directly from the abstract CIM_Component association (instead
2798 of being forced to base their implementation class on the concrete CIM_ConcreteComponent
2799 association).

2800 **7.13.6 Trivial class adaptation**

2801 A trivial class adaptation does not define additional requirements beyond those defined by its adapted
2802 class and its base adaptations. Trivial class adaptations typically are defined as a point of reference for
2803 other profiles, such that referencing profiles can define adaptations based on them. Another typical use of
2804 a trivial class adaptation is introducing a concrete equivalent of an abstract class adaptation in the case

2805 where no additional requirements need to be defined beyond those defined by the abstract class
2806 adaptation.

2807 7.13.7 Examples of class adaptations

2808 An example of a simple adaptation that does not establish additional constraints is a profile that
2809 addresses the management domain of computer system management, adapts the CIM_ComputerSystem
2810 class modeling computer systems, and does not specify constraints on properties. In this case a
2811 conformant implementation of that profile's adaptation of the CIM_ComputerSystem class is only required
2812 to show non-Null values for the properties exposed by the CIM_ComputerSystem class that are either key
2813 properties, or that are properties with the REQUIRED qualifier having a value of True.

2814 Typical examples of adaptations that define additional constraints are:

- 2815 • A profile addressing the management of systems defining an adaptation of the
2816 CIM_ComputerSystem class for the representation of systems, and defining requirements and
2817 constraints only for a subset of the properties exposed by the CIM_ComputerSystem class.
- 2818 • A profile addressing the management of system memory defining an adaptation of the
2819 CIM_Memory class for the representation of system memory, and constraining that the value of
2820 the EnabledState property shall be 2 (Enabled).
- 2821 • A profile addressing the management of disks defining an adaptation of the CIM_StorageExtent
2822 class for the representation of RAID disks, and constraining that the value of the
2823 ErrorMethodology property shall match the pattern "RAID3|RAID4|RAID5".
- 2824 • A profile addressing the management of floppy disks defining an adaptation of the
2825 CIM_DiskDrive class for the representation of floppy disk drives, and constraining that each
2826 instance of the CIM_DiskDrive class representing a floppy drive shall be associated with the
2827 instance of the CIM_ComputerSystem class representing the containing system.

2828 An example for multiple adaptations of a class in one profile is a profile defining an adaptation of the
2829 CIM_AllocationCapabilities class to model the allocation capabilities of a resource pool and to model the
2830 mutability of resource allocations.

2831 An example for multiple adaptations of a class in multiple profiles is the CIM_System class that is adapted
2832 by many profiles to model very different forms of systems such as general purpose systems, network
2833 switches, storage arrays, or storage controllers. Each of these adaptations is implemented separately,
2834 and these implementations need to coexist within one WBEM server.

2835 An example for multiple adaptations of a class in multiple profiles with adaptation dependencies is the
2836 adaptation of the CIM_Processor class by two profiles:

- 2837 • A generic CPU profile defining an adaptation of the CIM_Processor class modeling processors
2838 in general

2839 For example, this profile could be implemented for physical processors in physical systems,
2840 exploiting management instrumentation provided by software components installed in the
2841 physical system. The set of instances controlled by that profile implementation would be
2842 CIM_Processor instances representing host processors.

- 2843 • A processor resource virtualization profile defining an adaptation of the CIM_Processor class
2844 modeling virtual processors, and requiring that this adaptation be based on that of the
2845 referenced generic CPU profile

2846 Typically this implies a separate profile implementation of the referenced generic CPU profile,
2847 exploiting management instrumentation provided by the virtualization platform in the context of
2848 which virtual processors exist. The set of instances provided by that profile implementation
2849 would be CIM_Processor instances representing virtual processors. The advantage resulting

2850 from the reuse of the CIM_Processor adaptation is that CIM_Processor instances representing
2851 virtual processors now are visible through the interface defined by the generic CPU profile;
2852 consequently, a client could manage the virtual processors through that interface in the same
2853 way as in the physical case. However, it should be noted that in this case the set of
2854 CIM_Processor instances is disjoint from that representing the host processors in the physical
2855 case.

2856 As detailed in clause 9, a profile implementation is required to conform to the definitions of the profile and
2857 those of referenced profiles. More specifically, an implementation of an adaptation is required to satisfy all
2858 requirements of all base adaptations, including instance requirements.

2859 7.14 Requirements for profile registration

2860 The CIM schema defines classes that enable the representation of implemented profile versions and their
2861 relationships, such as the CIM_RegisteredProfile class and the CIM_ElementConformsToProfile and
2862 CIM_ReferencedProfile associations. The Profile Registration profile (see [DSP1033](#)) defines a model for
2863 the representation of implemented profile versions and their relationships by defining the use of these
2864 classes; see [DSP1033](#) for details.

2865 Concrete profiles except the Profile Registration profile (see [DSP1033](#)) shall reference the Profile
2866 Registration profile (see [DSP1033](#)) as a mandatory profile.

2867 This implies that the central class adaptation (see 7.9.3.2) conforms to the requirements for central
2868 classes defined by the Profile Registration profile (see [DSP1033](#)), that the scoping class adaptation (see
2869 7.9.3.3) conforms to the requirements for scoping classes defined by the Profile Registration profile (see
2870 [DSP1033](#)), and that the adaptation of the CIM_RegisteredProfile class modeling the profile registration of
2871 the subject profile conforms with the requirements of the CIM_RegisteredProfile "profile class" defined by
2872 the Profile Registration profile (see [DSP1033](#)).

2873 NOTE 1 The requirements for central classes and scoping classes defined by the Profile Registration profile (see
2874 [DSP1033](#)) imply the implementation of a profile advertisement methodology.

2875 NOTE 2 It is expected that a future version of the Profile Registration profile (see [DSP1033](#)) is defined based on
2876 version 1.1 (or later) of this guide, and defines adaptations such as a CentralElement, a ScopingElement
2877 and a ProfileRegistration adaptation that could serve as base adaptations for the central class adaptation,
2878 the scoping class adaptation and the profile registration adaptation of referencing profiles. This will allow
2879 defining the requirements related to profile registration and to central class adaptations and scoping class
2880 adaptations more precisely.

2881 Abstract profiles may reference [DSP1033](#) as a mandatory profile; if so, the requirements of [DSP1033](#)
2882 apply for the (implicit) profile implementation of the abstract profile as part of a concrete profile derived
2883 from the abstract profile, as well as for the profile implementation of the concrete profile itself because
2884 that is also required to reference [DSP1033](#) as a mandatory profile.

2885 NOTE 1 This enables clients to be written against an abstract profile without requiring knowledge about the
2886 implemented concrete profile derived from the abstract profile.

2887 NOTE 2 Version 1.0 of this guide was unclear about whether or not abstract profiles were allowed to refer to
2888 [DSP1033](#).

2889 In any case, the requirements of 7.9.3.2, 7.9.3.3 and 7.9.3.4 apply.

2890 7.15 Requirements for the definition of features

2891 7.15.1 Introduction

2892 A feature is a named profile element; the rules defined in 7.2.2 apply. A feature groups the decisions for
2893 the implementation of one or more profile elements into a single decision. This grouping is established by
2894 defining the implementation of other profile element conditional on the implementation of the feature.

2895 7.15.2 General feature requirements

2896 A feature should bear a relationship to functionality in the profile or in the management domain. Profiles
2897 shall provide a functional description of each defined feature.

2898 Profiles should preferably define a feature instead of a chain of interdependent definitions in order to
2899 make decision points more explicit for implementers and ease the discovery of implementation
2900 capabilities for clients.

2901 7.15.3 Feature name

2902 A profile shall define a name for each feature it defines; the name shall be in conformance with the
2903 naming conventions defined in 7.2.2.

2904 7.15.4 Feature requirement level

2905 Profiles shall define their own features with a requirement level of optional, conditional or conditional
2906 exclusive.

2907 Profiles may define constraints on the implementation of features defined within the same or within
2908 referenced profiles; for example, a referencing profile may require implementation of a feature that is
2909 defined as optional in a referenced profile.

2910 7.15.5 Feature granularity

2911 Feature granularity affects the discoverability and availability of features. Two kinds of feature granularity
2912 are possible: Profile granularity and instance granularity.

2913 • Features with profile granularity are either generally available or not available within a particular
2914 profile implementation. Feature discoverability is defined at a global level, such that if the
2915 feature is available, it is available for all instances affected by definitions that depend in the
2916 feature.

2917 • Features with instance granularity are available only for certain instances. Feature
2918 discoverability is defined at an adaptation instance level, such that the availability of the feature
2919 is indicated only for certain adaptation instances that conform to additional requirements.

2920 Profiles shall define the granularity of each feature by indicating whether the feature is defined with either
2921 profile granularity or with instance granularity; if defined with instance granularity, profile shall state an
2922 adaptation and the conditions for which instances of that adaptation the feature is required to be
2923 available.

2924 An example of a feature with profile granularity might be a FanStateManagement feature of an
2925 Example Fan profile. If the feature is available (and discoverable for example by means of a property
2926 value in a global capabilities instance), fan state management is available for any instance of that profile's
2927 Fan adaptation.

2928 In another example (detailed in 7.15.1), a FanSpeedSensor feature might be defined with a granularity of
2929 "Fan instance" and conditioned (with a managed environment condition) to be implemented only if the
2930 managed environment contains fans with sensors. In this case, the implementation of the feature would
2931 provide — and a client would be able to discover — feature-defined functionality only for those instances
2932 of the Fan adaptation that represent fans with sensors, while other instances of the Fan adaptation would
2933 not be affected by the feature implementation, and the presence of the feature could not be discovered
2934 through those instances.

2935 7.15.6 Feature discovery

2936 Feature discovery aims at enabling clients to discover the availability of features.

- 2937 It is highly recommended that a profile defines at least one mechanism that facilitates discovery of a
2938 feature availability as part of a profile implementation.
- 2939 Each discovery mechanism shall be defined such that the availability and the unavailability of the feature
2940 can be discovered.
- 2941 If more than one discovery mechanism is defined for a particular feature, one of them shall be designated
2942 as preferred.
- 2943 An example of a feature discovery mechanism is a specific value constraint for a property value in a
2944 capabilities instance. For example, an Example Fan profile could define the preferred discovery path for
2945 the availability of its FanElementNameEdit feature by requiring that if the FanElementNameEdit feature is
2946 available for a fan then there is an associated instance of the CIM_EnabledLogicalElementCapabilities
2947 class for which the value of the ElementNameEdit property is True. These capabilities instances could be
2948 combined into one shared instance that is associated to those Fan instances for which the feature is
2949 available.
- 2950 The discovery mechanism described in the previous paragraph could be modified for features with
2951 instance granularity by requiring specific capabilities instances instead of global ones.
- 2952 Another example of a discovery mechanism applicable for features with instance granularity is the
2953 presence of an associated instance in the context of an instance for which the feature can apply. For
2954 example, this is the case for the Fan instances described in the last example in 7.15.5, but only in the
2955 case where the FanSpeedSensor feature is supported for those fans that are represented by Fan
2956 instances with an associated FanSpeedSensor instance.

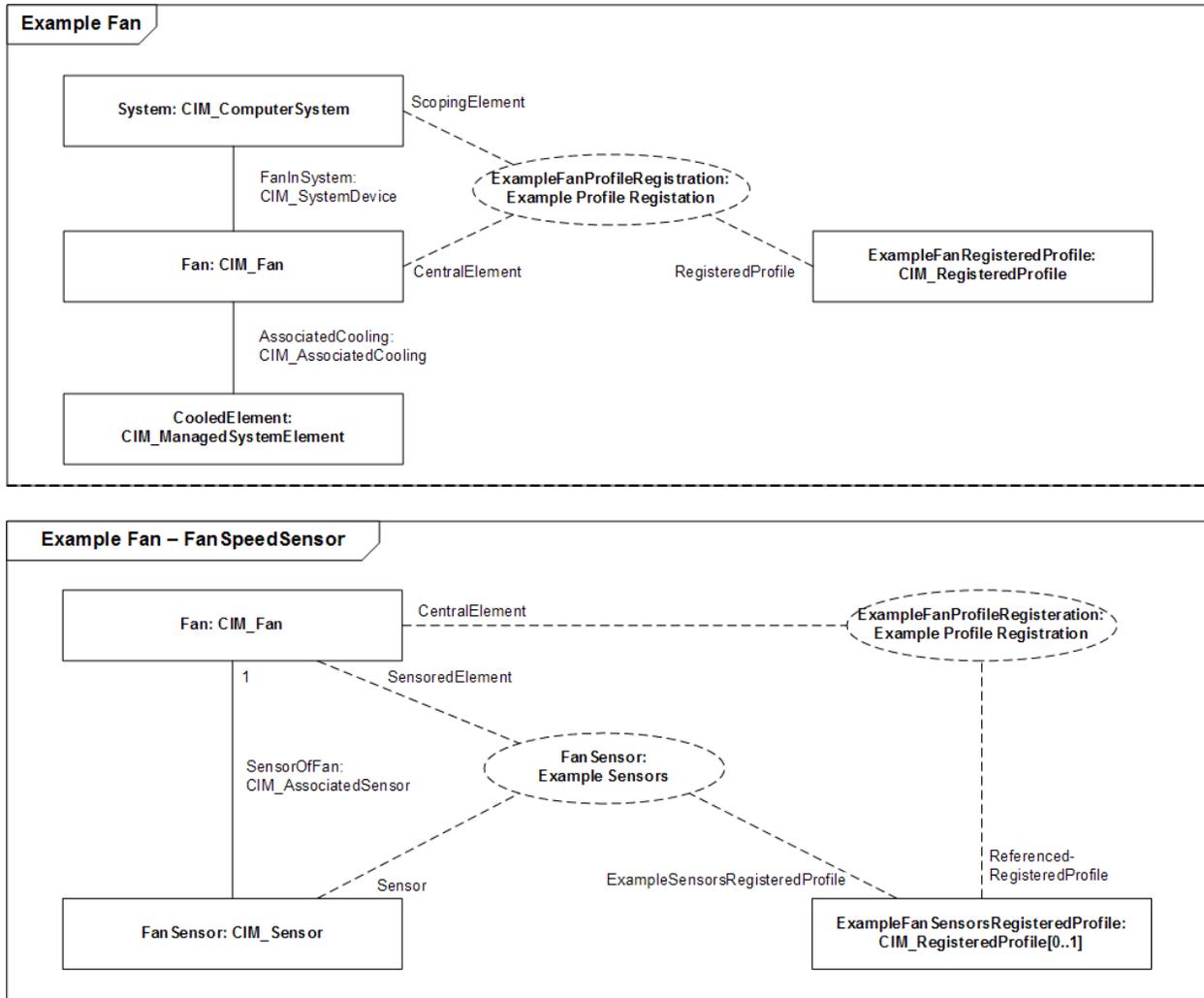
2957 **7.15.7 Feature requirements**

- 2958 Feature requirements are the implementation requirements resulting from the commitment to implement a
2959 feature. The commitment can result from a deliberate decision of the implementer, but in the case of
2960 conditional features can also be the result of a True condition. Feature requirements are not defined as
2961 an integral part of the feature. Instead, they are specified as conditional requirements for other profile
2962 definitions such as referenced profiles, adaptations, property requirements, method requirements,
2963 operation requirements, or metric requirements. This approach enables the specification of profile
2964 elements that depend on more than one feature.
- 2965 A profile shall define feature requirements in terms of requiring otherwise optional profile elements as
2966 conditional or conditional exclusive with feature implementation conditions (see 7.4.3), or by defining
2967 additional constraints. Profiles shall use the following mechanisms to define feature requirements:
- 2968 • Defining profile elements as conditional or conditional exclusive with respect to the feature
2969 implementation; this applies to
 - 2970 – profile references
 - 2971 – otherwise optional, conditional or conditional exclusive profile elements within referenced
2972 profiles, such as features, adaptations, property requirements, or method requirements
 - 2973 – adaptations
 - 2974 – base adaptations
 - 2975 – property requirements in adaptations
 - 2976 – method requirements in adaptations
 - 2977 – operation requirements in adaptations
 - 2978 – error reporting requirements in adaptations
 - 2979 – metric requirements in adaptations

- 2980 • Defining constraints that depend on implementation of the feature
- 2981 NOTE Clause 9 defines requirements for implementations of profiles, including those of conditional profile
- 2982 elements. See clause 9 for the implementation requirements resulting from features.

2983 **7.15.8 Feature example**

2984 Figure 8 shows two DMTF collaboration structure diagrams that detail the collaboration defined by an
 2985 Example Fan profile. For respective diagrams of the Example Profile Registration profile (referenced in
 2986 both parts of Figure 8) and an Example Sensors profile (referenced in the lower part of Figure 8), see
 2987 7.13.2.1. For details on DMTF collaboration structure diagrams, see 8.3.4.



2988

2989 **Figure 8 – Examples of DMTF collaboration structure diagrams**

2990 The upper diagram in Figure 8 depicts the mandatory class adaptations defined by the Example Fan
 2991 profile, and how adaptations of the Example Fan profile are based on the adaptations defined in the
 2992 Example Profile Registration profile. It also shows implied instance requirements: For example, the Fan
 2993 adaptation is based on the CIM_Fan class as indicated by the class name that follows the colon. The
 2994 implied multiplicity [*] of the Fan adaptation indicates that zero or more instances are required to exist at
 2995 any time. The association end multiplicity of 1 shown at the upper end of the SensorOfFan association

2996 adaptation in the lower diagram of Figure 8 indicates that each fan sensor provides sensor information for
2997 exactly one fan.

2998 The lower diagram in Figure 8 depicts the class adaptations of the Example Fan profile that contain
2999 requirements of its FanSpeedSensor feature. For example, the Example Fan profile defines a relationship
3000 to the Example Sensors profile, as depicted by the ExampleFanSensorsRegisteredProfile adaptation on
3001 the right side with a multiplicity of [0..1]; this means that there are definitions in the Example Fan profile
3002 that under certain conditions rely on definitions in the Example Sensors profile.

3003 In this example, it is assumed that the Example Fan profile defines a FanSpeedSensor feature that is
3004 conditional on the existence of fans with fan speed sensors in the managed environment; this is an
3005 example of a managed environment condition (see 7.4.7). Consequently an implementer who implements
3006 the Example Fan profile for a particular type of managed environment (for example, computer systems
3007 produced by a particular vendor) would have to determine whether fans with sensors potentially exist in
3008 that type of managed environment. If this is the case, then the managed environment condition is True,
3009 and the Example Fan profile requires the implementation of the FanSpeedSensor feature.

3010 NOTE It is a typical situation that — as in this example — the implementation of a feature is only required if the
3011 managed environment potentially exhibits a particular characteristic (for example, potentially contains fans
3012 with sensors). At implementation time the implementer needs to check whether the characteristic is
3013 exhibited by the type of managed environment for which the profile is implemented. If that is the case, then
3014 the feature driven implementation requirements become effective and need to be implemented.

3015 Furthermore, in this example it is assumed that individual fans in the managed environment may or may
3016 not have sensors. However, this cannot be expressed in the CSD, and in any case needs to be stated in
3017 the form of normative definitions in the Example Fan profile. A further assumption in this example is that
3018 the Example Fan profile defines the FanSpeedSensor feature with a granularity of "Fan instance," and
3019 defines the preferred discovery mechanism for the feature by stating that the feature is supported for a
3020 particular Fan instance if a FanSensor instance is associated through a SensorOfFan association
3021 adaptation instance. The instance granularity of the feature in effect requires the profile implementation to
3022 provide feature-required elements only for those Fan instances that represent a fan with a sensor.

3023 NOTE Features with instance granularity allow mandating presence of the feature only for the CIM representation
3024 of specific managed objects that exhibit a certain behavior or functional element (such as fans with
3025 sensors). Feature implementations need to detect and respectively handle these situations at runtime.
3026 Typically, feature discovery for features with instance granularity is also defined on a per-instance basis,
3027 such that from a client perspective the feature is present only for instances exposing the characteristic.

3028 A client would discover the presence of the FanSpeedSensor feature for a particular Fan instance by
3029 traversing from the Fan instance through SensorOfFan to FanSensor instances; the presence of such
3030 instances would indicate the presence of the FanSpeedSensor feature for the Fan instance.

3031 An alternate discovery path for the FanSpeedSensor feature could be defined through the
3032 ExampleFanSensorsRegisteredProfile instance associated through the CIM_ReferencedProfile
3033 association to the ExampleFanRegisteredProfile instance representing the implemented version of the
3034 Example Fan profile. This is depicted in the lower part of Figure 8 on the right side by showing the
3035 ExampleSensorsRegisteredProfile adaptation of the Example Fan profile based on the
3036 ReferencedRegisteredProfile adaptation of the Example Profile Registration profile. The
3037 ReferencedRegisteredProfile adaptation in turn requires the implementation of the
3038 CIM_ReferencedProfile association to the CentralElement adaptation. Thus, a client inspecting an
3039 implemented version of the Example Fan profile as represented by a ExampleFanRegisteredProfile
3040 instance can detect that the FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented by traversing the
3041 CIM_ReferencedProfile association to a ExampleFanSensorsRegisteredProfile instance. If that instance
3042 exists, this indicates that the FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented in general; however, because in
3043 this example the FanSpeedSensor feature is defined with a granularity of "Fan instance", the feature is
3044 available only for those Fan instances that represent fans with sensors.

3045 If the FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented, then all other profile definitions that are conditional on this
3046 feature effectively become implementation-required; see clause 9 for an algorithm allowing the
3047 determination of all implementation-required profile elements in the context of the profile implementation
3048 of one or more referenced profiles. Particularly in this example, each fan equipped with a fan speed
3049 sensor needs to be represented by a Fan instance that is based on the SensoredElement adaptation of
3050 the Example Sensors profile.

3051 **7.16 Requirements for the definition of use cases**

3052 **7.16.1 General**

3053 Profiles should define use cases that demonstrate the use of the interface defined by the profile. The
3054 purpose of use cases is to illustrate the steps required to perform a management task by means of the
3055 interface defined by the profile, and the effects on managed objects in a managed environment and their
3056 CIM representation in the course of performing that task.

3057 A use case is a named profile element; the rules defined in 7.2.2 apply.

3058 A use case defines the interaction of an external client and an implementation in the execution of steps
3059 required to be performed in the realization of functionality defined in the profile. Clients may be programs
3060 such as CIM clients or other external entities such as a person using a switch attached to the system.
3061 Use cases should represent a complete task from the perspective of the client; this may involve multiple
3062 CIM operations or methods.

3063 It is emphasized that use cases do not define functionality. Instead, use cases *apply* functionality that is
3064 defined by the profile. For that reason use cases are not considered as normative elements of a profile,
3065 but as essential informative parts that detail potential client activities enabled through implementations of
3066 the profile.

3067 **NOTE** The definition of use cases given in this subclause calls for a precise formal specification of the invocation
3068 of methods and operations that are fully specified by the profile and its referenced specifications. This
3069 definition of use cases is different from that commonly used in software development where a use case
3070 informally describes a required behavior of a yet to be developed software component.

3071 Use cases should not contain or repeat normative requirements. Normative requirements are defined by
3072 other parts of the profile such as the definition of adaptations. However, use cases may informally detail
3073 expected effects in the managed environment and respective changes in the CIM model defined by the
3074 profile.

3075 Each required operation or method should be applied by at least one use case. A use case may apply
3076 zero or more methods, and a particular operation or method may be applied by more than one use case.

3077 **7.16.2 Requirements for the definition of state descriptions**

3078 State descriptions may be provided as part of a use case, but may be provided separately and be
3079 referenced other parts of the profile, particularly use cases.

3080 State descriptions defined outside of a use case are named profile elements that describe the state of an
3081 instance of (a subset of) the model defined by a profile at a particular point in time.

3082 State descriptions within a use case may be named for the purpose of referencing them within a across
3083 use cases defined in the same profile.

3084 State descriptions should be stated in terms of adaptation instances, their properties with actual values,
3085 and by stating which managed object is represented. Only adaptation instances that are involved in the
3086 processing of referencing use cases need to be described. Likewise, for each stated adaptation instance
3087 the set of stated property value pairs may be constricted to those relevant in referencing use cases.

3088 Within state descriptions, adaptation instances may be named for the purpose of referencing them. For a
3089 particular adaptation instance, these names are required to be unique only within the scope of the state
3090 description; in other words, the use of the same name for an adaptation instance in two unrelated state
3091 descriptions does not imply the same adaptation instance. References to adaptation instances should
3092 ensure that the context to their state description is established.

3093 State descriptions may be expressed in the form of DMTF object diagrams; for details, see 8.3.7.

3094 **7.16.3 Requirements for the definition of preconditions**

3095 For each use case the preconditions shall be defined.

3096 Preconditions are state descriptions (see 7.16.2) that describe the *initial* state of an instance of (a subset
3097 of) the CIM model defined by the profile.

3098 Additional preconditions may be stated in terms of managed objects. In exceptional cases, preconditions
3099 may be stated exclusively in terms of the managed objects.

3100 Preconditions may refer to the outcome of other use cases, enabling chaining of use cases.

3101 **7.16.4 Requirements for the definition of flows of activities**

3102 Flows of activities should be stated as sequences of steps; however, steps may be skipped or iterated
3103 depending on the result of other steps.

3104 Each step should be described in terms of methods and operations that are defined by the subject profile
3105 or by referenced profiles in the form of method requirements.

3106 For each use case step, the following types of provisions should be stated:

- 3107 • the instance on which an operation or method is performed
- 3108 • the name of the operation or method
- 3109 • the names and values of input parameters relevant to the use case
- 3110 • the expected effect on the managed environment
- 3111 • the corresponding changes on the CIM model
- 3112 • the names and values of output parameters relevant to the use case
- 3113 • the expected return values, and the corresponding situations that result in the managed
3114 environment
- 3115 • the expected exceptions, and the corresponding situations that result in the managed
3116 environment

3117 Use cases may refer to other use cases, such that the steps defined by the referenced use cases are
3118 effectively embedded as part of the referencing use case.

3119 **7.16.5 Requirements for the definition of postconditions**

3120 For each use case the postconditions should be defined if the execution of the use case caused changes
3121 in the CIM model defined by the profile.

3122 Postconditions are state descriptions (see 7.16.2) that describe the *resulting* state of (a subset of) the
3123 CIM model defined by the profile after the use case was processed. Postconditions shall be separately
3124 defined for the various possible outcomes of processing the use case, such as success and failures.

3125 Additional postconditions may be stated in terms of managed objects. In exceptional cases,
3126 postconditions may be stated exclusively in terms of managed objects.

3127 NOTE Note that as described in 6.6.3 the effect of executing a method or operation on a CIM instance first effects
3128 a change in the managed object in the managed environment that is represented by that CIM instance;
3129 only after that change is processed, the CIM instances representing aspects of the changed managed
3130 object will exhibit corresponding changes in terms of changed property values. However, the state of
3131 managed objects may change fast and frequently; consequently, it is possible that the state of a managed
3132 object as viewed through a CIM instance obtained by a client in a subsequent step after the execution of a
3133 use case exposes a state that already differs from the state that is expected as the result of the use case
3134 execution.

3135 **7.17 Backward compatibility**

3136 This subclause defines rules for maintaining backward compatibility between versions of profiles.
3137 Backward compatibility is a characteristic of profiles enabling clients written against a particular minor
3138 version of a profile to use the functionality specified by that version in the context of a profile
3139 implementation of a later minor version of the profile, without requiring modifications of the client.

3140 Backward compatibility relates to the set of minor versions of the profile with the same major version
3141 number. A specific version of a profile shall be backward compatible to its previous minor versions. For
3142 example, the version 2.4 of a profile shall be backward compatible to versions 2.0, 2.1, 2.2, and 2.3. A
3143 new minor version may extend the functionality of previous versions.

3144 A change that breaks backward compatibility is termed incompatibility.

3145 Incompatibilities may be introduced in new major versions.

3146 Incompatibilities shall not be introduced in new minor versions or in new update versions, except for error
3147 corrections. If incompatibilities are introduced in new minor versions or in new update versions as part of
3148 error corrections, each incompatibility shall be described from a client perspective, and shall state both
3149 the version it breaks, and the version introducing the incompatibility.

3150 **7.18 Definition of experimental content**

3151 A profile may designate definitions as experimental. In this case the rules about experimental content as
3152 defined in the "Document conventions" of this guide for experimental material shall be applied.

3153 A profile that uses experimental schema elements shall designate the definitions that use the
3154 experimental schema elements as experimental.

3155 **7.19 Deprecation of profile content**

3156 A new minor or update version of a profile may deprecate the definition of profile elements or other profile
3157 definitions. All deprecated profile definitions shall be continuously documented in new minor or update
3158 versions of a profile.

3159 For deprecated profile definitions the rules about deprecated content as defined in the "Document
3160 conventions" of this guide for deprecated material shall be applied.

3161 Deprecated profile definitions may be removed in new major versions of the profile.

3162 Profiles should not use deprecated profile content (from other profiles) or deprecated schema elements.
3163 However, minor revisions of profiles that use schema elements that are deprecated in a newer version of
3164 the schema are not obliged to be upgraded to the new schema version just for the purpose of changing to
3165 the replacement of the deprecated element.

3166 **8 Profile general conventions and guidelines**

3167 **8.1 General**

3168 Clause 8 defines general conventions and guidelines that apply for all kinds of profiles, including those
3169 specified in form of profile specifications (as detailed in clause 9), or in the form of machine readable
3170 profiles. In any case with respect to the profile content the requirements detailed in clause 7 apply.

3171 **8.2 Linguistic and notational conventions**

3172 This subclause defines linguistic and notational conventions for textual definitions in profiles.

3173 All words should be in lower case unless one of the following conditions is met:

- 3174 • The word starts a new sentence, heading, or list item.
- 3175 • The word is a proper noun, such as Ethernet.
- 3176 • The word is an acronym, such as CPU.
- 3177 • The words are part of a profile name (see 7.6.2), such as Profile Registration.
- 3178 • The word is a schema element, such as CIM_SystemDevice.

3179 Phrases should not be concatenated into one word unless one of the following conditions is met:

- 3180 • The word is the name of a named profile element (see 7.2.2), such as FanStateManagement or
3181 FanCapabilities.
- 3182 • The word is a schema element, such as CIM_SystemDevice, EnabledState, or
3183 RequestStateChange().
- 3184 • The word is an object name, such as MAINCPUFAN.

3185 Elements of the managed environment and elements of the CIM model defined by the profile should be
3186 clearly distinguished. The following rule set is established in order to avoid wrong, unclear, or confusing
3187 text that typically results from mixing elements from the managed environment and elements from the
3188 CIM model defined by a profile.

3189 The following rules should be adhered to:

- 3190 • CIM class names or adaptation names should not be used to refer to the object types defined in
3191 the management domain, and vice versa.
- 3192 • CIM class names or adaptation names should not be used to refer to the managed objects in
3193 the managed environment (that are represented by their instances), and vice versa.
- 3194 • References to instances of CIM classes or adaptations should contain the word "instance"
3195 unless the instance is clearly identified by an instance name.
- 3196 • The managed object represented by an instance should be clearly identified, either immediately
3197 such as in "The VirtualSystem instance VSYS4 representing virtual system 4", or indirectly by a
3198 previously established context.
- 3199 • The value of a property should be distinguished from the property itself.
- 3200 • Object names should be all uppercase, such as in MAINCPUFAN.

3201 For example, assume the specification of an Example Fan profile that defines a Fan adaptation of the
3202 CIM_Fan class. The Fan adaptation models fans that provide cooling for managed elements within
3203 systems. Furthermore, assume an example situation where a Fan instance named MAINCPUFAN
3204 represents the fan of the main CPU within an example system.

3205 Table 2 juxtaposes examples of recommended phrasing with examples of phrasing that is wrong or
 3206 confusing.

3207 **Table 2 – Specification recommendations**

Recommended	Not recommended (wrong, unclear or confusing)
<p>"The Fan instance MAINCPUFAN represents the CPU fan."</p> <p>NOTE 1 This text defines MAINCPUFAN, such that it can be used in subsequent text. Typically definitions like this refer to a DMTF object diagram showing the identified instance.</p> <p>NOTE 2 Fan identifies the Fan adaptation, MAINCPUFAN identifies a particular instance, and CPU fan identifies a managed object. Names of named profile elements (such as adaptations) are capitalized (see 7.2.2), object names should be all uppercase, and all other words are not capitalized unless required by normal English language.</p>	<p>"MAINCPUFAN is the fan of the main CPU."</p> <p>Problem: MAINCPUFAN identifies the Fan instance that <i>represents</i> the main CPU fan. Thus MAINCPUFAN is a CIM representation of the fan, but it <i>is not</i> the fan itself.</p>
<p>Preferred: "The value of the EnabledState property in MAINCPUFAN is 2 (Enabled)."</p> <p>Alternative: "The EnabledState value in MAINCPUFAN is 2 (Enabled)."</p>	<p>"MAINCPUFAN is Enabled."</p> <p>Problem: CIM instances are not "Enabled"; instead, CIM instances exhibit property values that reflect the state of the represented object in the managed environment.</p> <p>"The state of the main CPU fan is 2 (Enabled)."</p> <p>Problem: The state of the managed object (the CPU fan) is being confused with the state as viewed through the CIM instance representing the managed object. If the CPU fan is enabled, that is reflected in the Fan instance MAINCPUFAN through the value 2 (Enabled) for the EnabledState property.</p> <p>"The fan state is Enabled."</p> <p>Problem: The state of the managed object is being confused with the textual representation of a property value in the instance representing the managed object.</p> <p>"EnabledState shall match 2."</p> <p>Problem: The property name and the property value are not distinguished.</p>

3208 **8.3 Conventions and guidelines for diagrams**

3209 **8.3.1 General**

3210 Five types of diagrams are commonly used in profiles:

- 3211 • **EXPERIMENTAL: DMTF collaboration structure diagrams** (see 8.3.4) show the structure of a
 3212 profile or subset thereof, and the collaborations that this structure makes possible.
- 3213 • **EXPERIMENTAL: DMTF adaptation diagrams** (see 8.3.5) show the adaptations defined by a
 3214 profile or subset thereof, and possibly adaptations defined in referenced profiles.
- 3215 • **DMTF class diagrams** (see 8.3.6) show the classes adapted by a profile (and possibly classes
 3216 adapted by referenced profiles).
- 3217 • **DEPRECATED: DMTF profile class diagrams** (see 10.3.3.2) show "profile classes" (see
 3218 deprecation notice in 7.13.1). DMTF profile class diagrams are only admissible in revisions of
 3219 existing profile specifications that maintain the traditional profile specification structure (see
 3220 10.3.3).

- 3221 • **DMTF object diagrams** (see 8.3.7, also referred to as instance diagrams) show a set of related
3222 objects (or, more precisely, adaptation instances) at a point in time. Object diagrams may be
3223 associated with use cases, by showing how the use case affects properties and object
3224 relationships.
- 3225 • **DMTF sequence diagrams** (see 8.3.8) show the interaction between adaptation instances in
3226 terms of methods and operations.

3227 **8.3.2 General diagram guidelines**

- 3228 Diagrams are not normative; all normative information shall be provided in text.
- 3229 Fonts in diagrams should not be less than 10 points, and shall not be less than 6 points.
- 3230 For DMTF diagrams the notational conventions as established by the [OMG UML Superstructure](#) apply.

3231 **8.3.3 Diagram color conventions**

3232 The color conventions as defined in this subclause should be applied for DMTF adaptation diagrams
3233 (see 8.3.5), DMTF class diagrams (see 8.3.6), DMTF profile class diagrams (DEPRECATED, see
3234 10.3.3.2), and DMTF object diagrams (see 8.3.7). Deviations from the color conventions are permitted,
3235 but they shall be documented and consistently applied.

3236 The conventions defined in this subclause are an adapted subset of the conventions outlined in diagrams
3237 that depict schema definitions owned by DMTF.

3238 The following color conventions apply:

- 3239 • Associations – red line



3240

- 3241 • Aggregation association – green line with a hollow diamond at the aggregating end



3242

- 3243 • Composition association – green line with a solid diamond at the aggregating end



3244

- 3245 • Inheritance relationships – blue line with hollow arrow at the superclass end



3246

3247 In DMTF adaptation diagrams this symbol may also be used to represent the "based on"
3248 relationship between adaptations. In DMTF object diagrams, inheritance relationships shall not
3249 be shown.

3250 **DEPRECATED**

- 3251 • Composition association – green line with a hollow diamond and a dot at the aggregating end



3252

3253 NOTE In [OMG UML Superstructure](#) a dot at the endpoint indicates that the endpoint is owned by the
3254 connected element. However, with CIM associations, an association endpoint is owned by the

3255 association itself; consequently, the former convention of showing a dot is incorrect, and is
 3256 replaced by the conventions for aggregation and composition associations not showing the dot.

- 3257 • Inheritance relationships – blue line with solid arrow at the superclass end



3258
 3259 NOTE In [OMG UML Superstructure](#) a closed arrow at an endpoint of a UML graphic path is defined to
 3260 indicate an UML extension, whereas a hollow arrow is defined to indicate a UML generalization.
 3261 Because CIM inheritance is logically equivalent to the UML concept of generalizations — and
 3262 not to that of UML extensions — a hollow arrow is required at the end connecting to the
 3263 generalized element, whereas the former use of a solid arrow is incorrect.
 3264 A UML extension indicates that the properties of a metaclass are extended through a
 3265 stereotype to flexibly add (and later remove) stereotypes to classes. A UML generalization is a
 3266 taxonomic relationship between a more general classifier and a more specific classifier where
 3267 each instance of the specific classifier is also an indirect instance of the general classifier, and
 3268 the specific classifier inherits the features of the more general classifier.

3269 **DEPRECATED**

3270

3271 **EXPERIMENTAL**

3272 **8.3.4 DMTF collaboration structure diagram guidelines**

3273 DMTF collaboration structure diagrams show the structure of a complete profile, or a logically related
 3274 subset of profile elements (such as features), and all or a part of the collaboration defined by the profile.

3275 DMTF collaboration structure diagrams are a specialization of UML composite structure diagrams; for the
 3276 normative definition of UML composite structure diagrams, see [OMG UML Superstructure](#).

3277 For DMTF collaboration structure diagrams the following additional rules and conventions apply:

- 3278 • A CSD shall depict either the complete collaboration defined by a profile, or a subset of that
 3279 collaboration.
- 3280 • A CSD shall be labeled as follows:

3281 `CSDLabel = RegisteredProfileName [WS "-" WS SubpartName WS`
 3282 `SubpartType]`

3283 `RegisteredProfileName` shall be the registered name of the profile. `SubpartName` shall
 3284 only be used if the CSD shows a subcollaboration of the profile; in this case, the `SubpartType`
 3285 may identify the type of the subpart, such as a feature, pattern, or scenario.

- 3286 • Adaptations of ordinary classes or indication classes shall be represented as UML parts.

3287 It is not required that all adaptations defined by a profile are shown; instead, the selection of
 3288 adaptations for display in one or more CSD diagrams is left to the profile author. Also, multiple
 3289 CSD diagrams may be shown, each reflecting a sub-collaboration defined in the profile.

3290 Each UML part shall be shown as a solid rectangle (box), and shall be named as follows:

3291 `PartName = AdaptationName *WSP ":" *WSP ClassName [*WSP "[" [*WSP`
 3292 `] PartMultiplicity [*WSP] "]"]`

3293 `AdaptationName` shall be the name of the ordinary class or indication adaptation, `ClassName`
 3294 shall be the name of the adapted ordinary or indication class, and `PartMultiplicity` shall
 3295 be the multiplicity of the part.

3296 UML part multiplicities shall correspond to the number of instances required by an adaptation.
 3297 UML part multiplicities shall be shown if deviating from the default "*" (zero to many).

- 3298 • Adaptations of associations shall be represented by UML connectors. Each UML connector
 3299 shall be shown as a solid line, connecting two UML parts. Each UML connector shall be named
 3300 as follows:

```
3301            ConnectorName = AssociationAdaptationName *WSP ":" *WSP
3302            AssociationClassName
```

3303 `AssociationAdaptationName` shall be the name of the association adaptation, and
 3304 `AssociationClassName` shall be the name of the adapted association class.

- 3305 – If represented in a CSD, references defined by association adaptations shall be
 3306 represented as UML endpoint names. UML endpoint names shall be shown as text at the
 3307 ends of a UML connector.

- 3308 – If represented in a CSD, reference multiplicities shall be represented by UML endpoint
 3309 multiplicities. The representation of reference multiplicities is required if deviating from the
 3310 default multiplicity "*" (zero to many).

- 3311 • The use of a profile may be represented as UML collaboration use. UML collaboration uses
 3312 shall be shown as dashed ovals. Each UML collaboration use shall be named as follows:

```
3313            CollaborationUseName = [ ProfileReferenceName ] *WSP ":" *WSP
3314            ProfileName
```

3315 `ProfileReferenceName` shall be the name of the profile reference as defined by the
 3316 referencing subject profile.

3317 `ProfileName` shall be the name of the referenced profile or the name of the subject profile in
 3318 the case where the subject profile defines adaptations based on other adaptations in the same
 3319 profile. If in the latter case a `ProfileReferenceName` is specified, the UML collaboration use
 3320 represents a complete new use of the subject profile by itself; otherwise, the UML collaboration
 3321 use serves only as an anchor point for base adaptations.

- 3322 • If represented in a CSD, the relationship between an adaptation of an ordinary class defined in
 3323 the subject profile and profiles defining base adaptations of that adaptation shall be shown as
 3324 UML role bindings.

3325 A UML role binding shall be shown as a dashed line connecting a UML collaboration use
 3326 representing the profile that defines a base adaptation, and the UML part representing a class
 3327 adaptation defined in the subject profile. A UML role binding shall be labeled close to the class
 3328 adaptation end, as follows:

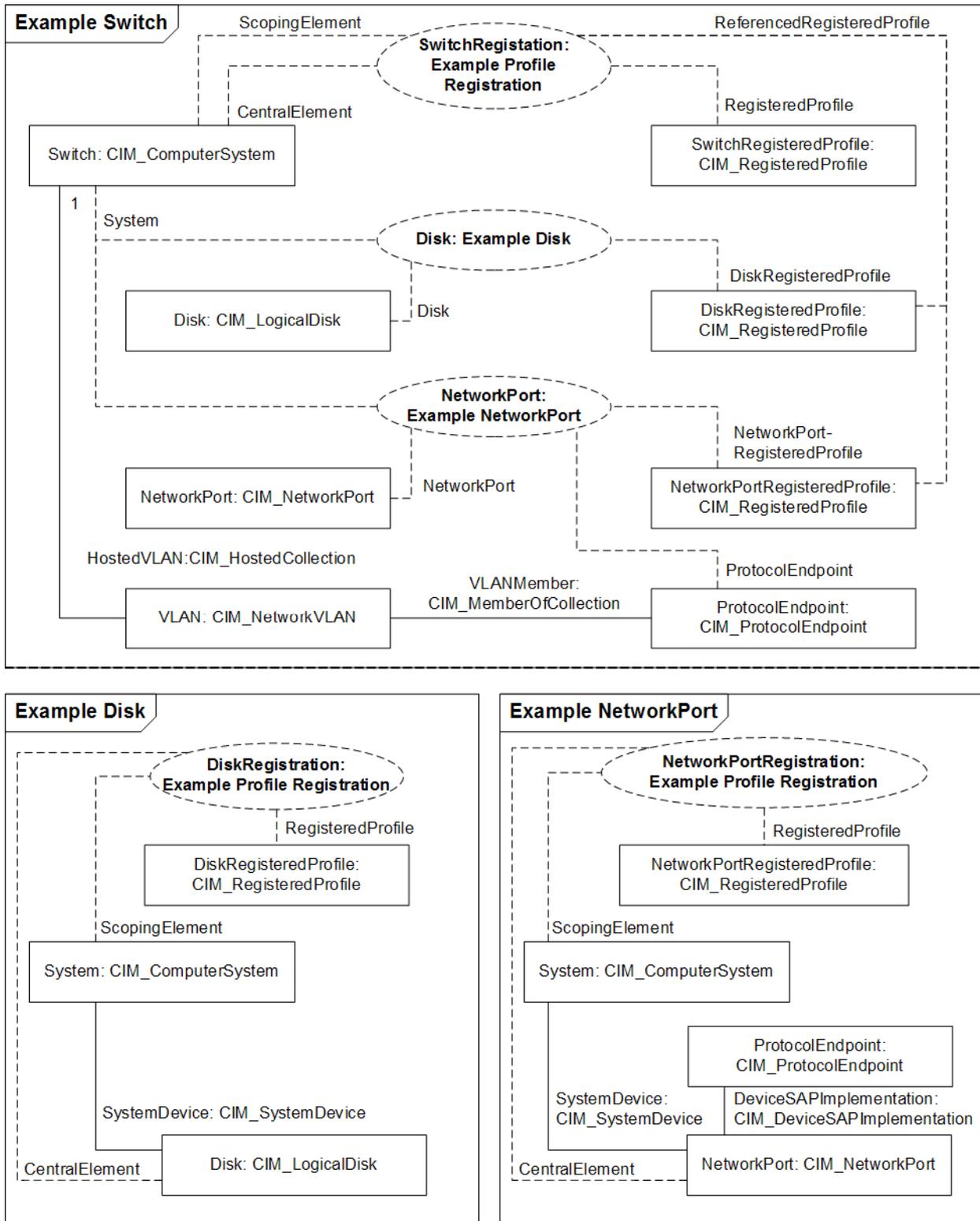
```
3329            EndRoleName = BaseAdaptationName
```

3330 `BaseAdaptationName` shall be the name of the base adaptation.

3331 For a particular adaptation it is not required that any relationships to profiles defining base
 3332 adaptations is shown through UML role bindings; the selection is left to the profile author.

- 3333 • As an alternative to the use of UML collaboration uses and UML role bindings, the inheritance
 3334 arrow may be used to show the relationship between an adaptation and its base adaptation(s).

3335 Figure 8 shows examples of three DMTF collaboration structure diagrams depicting collaborations
 3336 defined by one autonomous profile and two component profiles.



3337

3338

Figure 9 – Example of a DMTF collaboration structure diagram

3339 The upper part of Figure 9 shows the collaboration defined by an autonomous Example Switch profile.
 3340 The Example Switch profile models a switch with switch ports and with a disk that contains configuration
 3341 data. The collaboration defined by the autonomous Example Switch profile is depicted as follows:

- 3342 • The Example Switch profile defines a Switch adaptation of the CIM_ComputerSystem class.
 3343 This is depicted by the UML part (solid rectangle) named "Switch: CIM_ComputerSystem".
- 3344 • The Example Profile Registration profile is referenced by the Example Switch profile. This is
 3345 depicted by the UML collaboration use (dashed oval) named "SwitchRegistration:
 3346 Example Profile Registration".
- 3347 • The System adaptation is based on the CentralElement adaptation of the Example Profile
 3348 Registration profile. This is depicted by the UML role binding (dashed line) named
 3349 CentralElement that connects the UML part named "Switch: CIM_ComputerSystem" with
 3350 the UML collaboration named "SwitchRegistration: Example Profile
 3351 Registration".
- 3352 • The Example Switch profile references the Example Disk profile and the Example Network Port
 3353 profile. This is shown by the UML collaboration uses (dashed ovals) named "Disk: Example
 3354 Disk" and "NetworkPort: Example NetworkPort".
- 3355 • The Example Profile Registration profile requires profiles to express profile dependencies by
 3356 means of the CIM_ReferencedProfile association. For example, for the Example Disk profile this
 3357 is depicted by the UML role binding named ReferencedRegisteredProfile connecting the
 3358 UML collaboration named "SwitchRegistration: Example Profile Registration"
 3359 with the UML part (solid rectangle) named "DiskRegisteredProfile: CIM_Register-
 3360 edProfile". The latter corresponds to the DiskRegisteredProfile adaptation of the Example
 3361 Disk profile, as depicted by the UML role binding named DiskRegisteredProfile
 3362 connecting it with the UML collaboration use named "Disk: Example Disk".
- 3363 • The Example Switch profile defines a VLAN adaptation of the CIM_NetworkVLAN class. This is
 3364 depicted by the UML part named "VLAN: CIM_NetworkVLAN".
- 3365 • The Example Switch profile defines a HostedVLAN adaptation of the CIM_HostedCollection
 3366 association for the representation of the relationship between a switch and the VLANs hosted
 3367 by that switch. This is depicted by the UML connector (solid line) named "HostedVLAN:
 3368 CIM_HostedCollection".
- 3369 • Note that the UML endpoint multiplicity at the Switch side is 1, indicating that the VLAN
 3370 adaptation relates to the VLAN endpoints of exactly one switch. If the VLAN ranges over several
 3371 switches, the VLAN elements hosted by the other switches would have to be provided by
 3372 separate VLAN instances. This behavior is also implied by the definition of the
 3373 CIM_NetworkVLAN class.
- 3374 • Note that the implied UML part multiplicity of the "Switch: CIM_ComputerSystem" UML part
 3375 is "*", indicating that an implementation of the Example Switch profile controls zero or more
 3376 switches.

3377 **EXPERIMENTAL**

3378 **EXPERIMENTAL**3379 **8.3.5 DMTF adaptation diagram guidelines**

3380 DMTF adaptation diagrams are UML class diagrams (see [OMG UML Superstructure](#)) that conform to
3381 additional requirements defined in this subclause.

3382 The diagram color conventions defined in 8.3.3 apply.

3383 For DMTF adaptation diagrams the following additional rules and conventions apply:

3384 • DMTF adaptation diagrams shall show class adaptations (adaptations of ordinary classes,
3385 association classes, and indication classes).

3386 • A DMTF adaptation diagram shall be labeled as follows:

3387 `DADLabel = RegisteredProfileName [WS " - " WS SubsetName]`

3388 `RegisteredProfileName` shall be the registered name of the profile. `SubsetName` may be
3389 used if the DMTF adaptation diagram shows a subset of adaptations defined by the profile; in
3390 this case, `SubsetName` should paraphrase the purpose of the shown subset of adaptations.

3391 • If represented in a DMTF adaptation diagram, adaptations of ordinary classes or indication
3392 classes shall be represented as UML classes where the UML class name shall be the
3393 adaptation name. The following format shall be applied:

3394 `BoxLabel = AdaptationName`
3395 `["(" *WSP "from" WS RegisteredProfileName *WSP ")"]`
3396 `["{" *WSP "adapts" WS ClassName *WSP "}"]`

3397 `AdaptationName` shall be the name of the adaptation. If the adaptation is defined in a profile
3398 other than the subject profile, the "from" part shall be used and the referencing profile's
3399 registered profile name shall be stated as `RegisteredProfileName`. Unless the name of the
3400 adapted class is identical to the adaptation name prefixed with `CIM_`, the "adapts" part should
3401 be used and `ClassName` shall be the name of the adapted class.

3402 • If represented in a DMTF adaptation diagram, adaptations of associations shall be represented
3403 as UML associations, or more specifically as UML aggregations or UML compositions if
3404 respective semantics apply from the schema definition of the adapted association. The UML
3405 association name shall be the name of the association adaptation. The following format shall be
3406 applied:

3407 `AssociationLabel = AssociationAdaptationName`
3408 `["(" *WSP "from" WS RegisteredProfileName *WSP ")"]`
3409 `["{" *WSP "adapts" WS AssociationClassName *WSP "}"]`

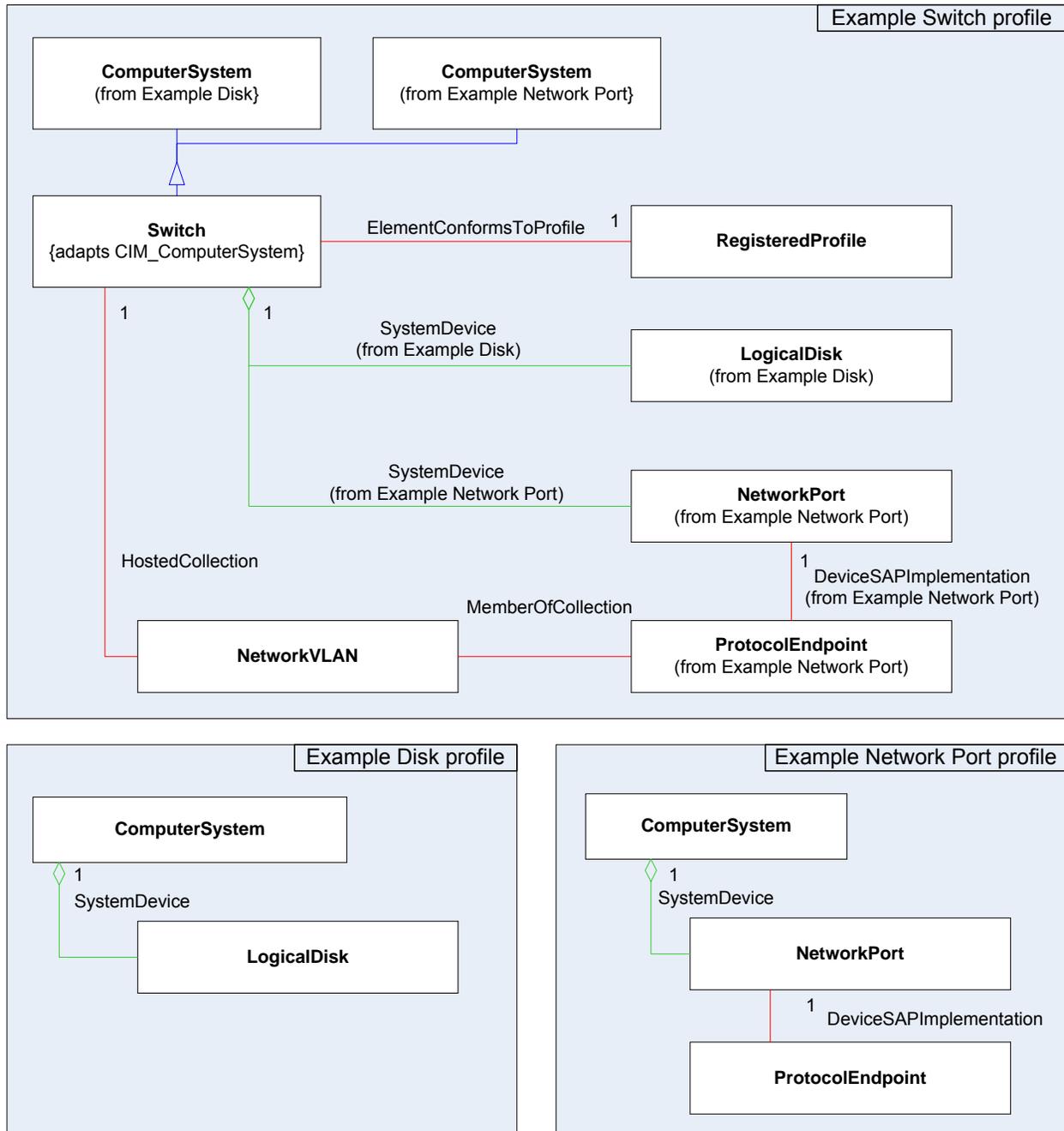
3410 `AssociationAdaptationName` shall be the name of the association adaptation. If the
3411 association adaptation is defined in a profile other than the subject profile, the "from" part shall
3412 be used and the referencing profile's registered profile name shall be stated as
3413 `RegisteredProfileName`. Unless the name of the adapted association class is identical to
3414 the adaptation name prefixed with `CIM_`, the "adapts" part should be used and
3415 `AssociationClassName` shall be the name of the adapted association class.

3416 – Reference properties required by association adaptations may be represented as UML
3417 association ends. If used, UML association ends may be shown as text at the ends of the
3418 UML association representing the association adaptation.

- 3419 – Reference multiplicities shall be represented as UML association end multiplicities if
- 3420 deviating from the default "*" (zero to many). The default multiplicity "*" may be
- 3421 represented by UML association end multiplicities.

- 3422 • In general, any adaptation defined by a profile should be depicted at most once in a DMTF
- 3423 adaptation diagram. The desire for depicting a particular adaptation more than once should be
- 3424 taken as an indicator that the definition of a separate adaptation is appropriate.

- 3425 • DMTF adaptation diagrams should not show properties and methods.



3426

3427

Figure 10 – Examples of DMTF adaptation diagrams

3428 Figure 10 shows examples of DMTF adaptation diagrams from one autonomous profile and two
3429 component profiles.

3430 NOTE The shaded rectangles are not part of the conventions for DMTF adaptation diagrams as defined in 8.3.5;
3431 they are shown here such that multiple DMTF adaptation diagrams can be condensed into one diagram.

3432 The upper part of Figure 10 shows the DMTF adaptation diagram of an autonomous Example Switch
3433 profile. It is assumed that the central class adaptation of the Example Switch profile is the Switch
3434 adaptation that adapts the CIM_ComputerSystem class, and is based on both the ComputerSystem
3435 adaptations defined in the Example Disk profile and in the Example Network Port profile.

3436 **EXPERIMENTAL**

3437 **8.3.6 DMTF class diagram guidelines**

3438 DMTF class diagrams are UML class diagrams (see [OMG UML Superstructure](#)) that conform to additional
3439 requirements defined in this subclause.

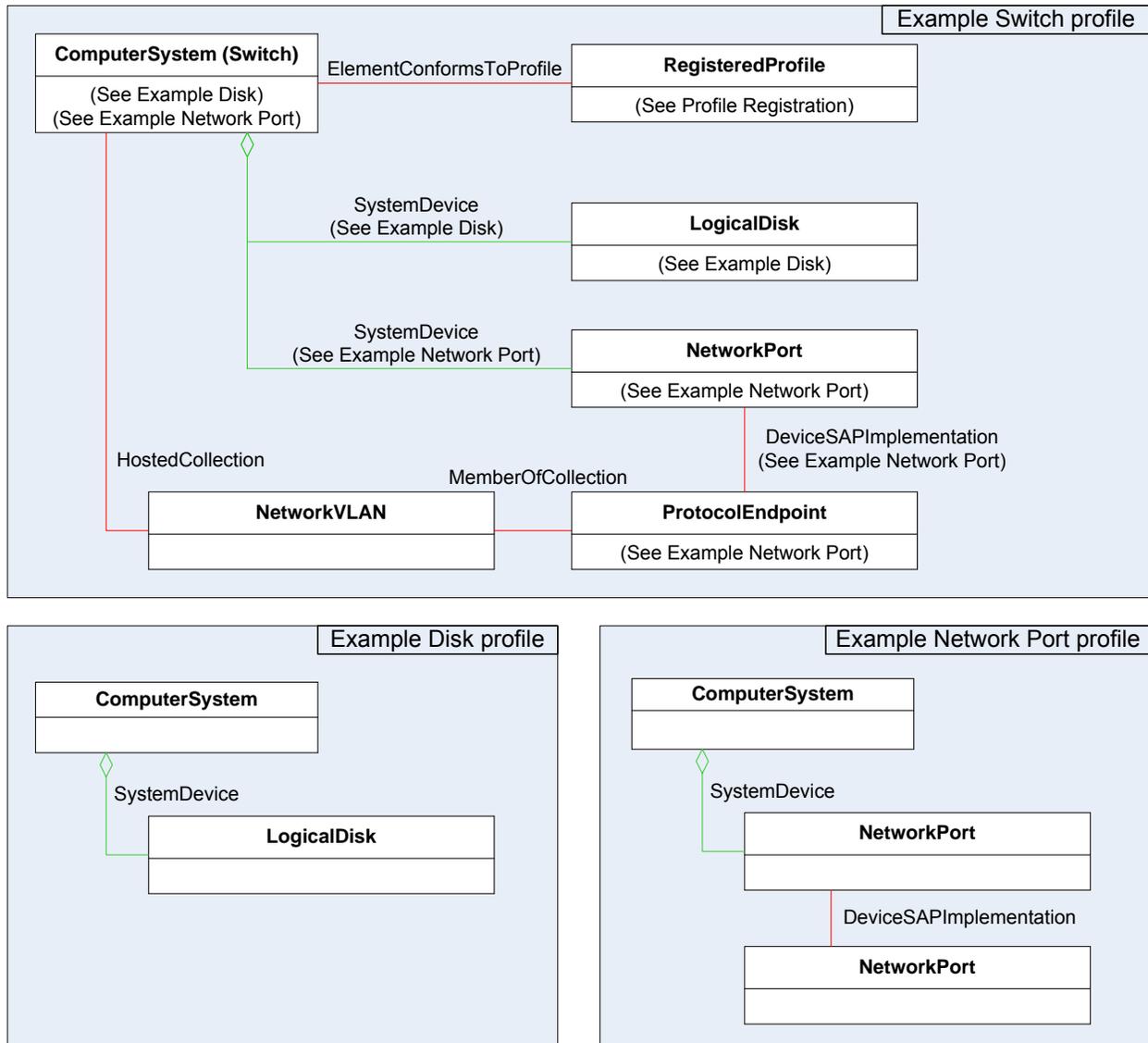
3440 The diagram color conventions defined in 8.3.3 apply.

3441 DMTF class diagrams shall show adapted ordinary classes, adapted association classes and adapted
3442 indication classes.

3443 NOTE A particular class may be shown multiple times in a class diagram; this is in conformance with the rules for
3444 UML diagrams specified in [OMG UML Superstructure](#).

3445 DMTF class diagrams shall not mix the conventions of class and object diagrams.

3446 DMTF class diagrams may show properties and methods; if so, only properties and methods referenced
3447 by the subject profile should be shown.



3448

3449

Figure 11 – Examples of DMTF class diagrams

3450 Figure 11 shows examples of class diagrams from one autonomous profile and two component profiles.

3451 NOTE The shaded rectangles are not part of the conventions for DMTF class diagrams as defined in 8.3.6; they
 3452 are shown here such that multiple DMTF class diagrams can be condensed into one diagram.

3453 The upper part of Figure 11 shows the class diagram of an autonomous Example Switch profile. It is
 3454 assumed that the central class adaptation of the Example Switch profile is the Switch adaptation that is
 3455 based on the CIM_ComputerSystem class, and in addition is based on both the ComputerSystem
 3456 adaptations defined in the Example Disk profile and in the Example Network Port profile.

3457 **8.3.7 DMTF object diagram guidelines**

3458 DMTF object diagrams (also referred to as instance diagrams) are UML object diagrams (see [OMG UML](#)
 3459 [Superstructure](#)) that satisfy the additional constraints defined in this subclause.

3460 DMTF object diagrams shall show a set of related adaptation instances at a point in time. DMTF object
 3461 diagrams may be associated with use cases — showing how adaptation instances, particularly their
 3462 property values and their relationships, are visible to clients in the process of performing a sequence of
 3463 activities as described by a use case.

3464 DMTF object diagrams depict example instantiations and should illustrate best practice implementations.

3465 The labels of any CIM instances in a DMTF object diagram shall be specified using the format (in ABNF):

```
3466 InstanceLabel = [ InstanceName *WSP ] "/" *WSP AdaptationName /
3467 ":" *WSP ClassName /
3468 "/" *WSP AdaptationName ":" *WSP ClassName
3469 InstanceName = *["A"-"Z"/("0"-"9")/"_"]
```

3470 The AdaptationName ABNF rule shall evaluate to the name of a class adaptation defined in the subject
 3471 profile or a referenced profile. The value of the InstanceName ABNF rule is an arbitrary uppercase
 3472 string that may be used to refer to the instance from any text describing the diagram; it may be omitted if
 3473 the resulting label is not ambiguous within the diagram. ClassName may be used in addition to
 3474 AdaptationName; it may also be used instead of the ClassName when presenting the use of a class for
 3475 which an adaptation is not required by the subject profile.

3476 Examples:

```
3477 SYSTEM1 / System ; InstanceName/AdaptationName
3478 SYS_2: CIM_ComputerSystem ; InstanceName:ClassName
3479 CLUSTER/Cluster: CIM_AdminDomain ; all three components
3480 /VirtualSystem ; /AdaptationName
3481 : CIM_ComputerSystem ; :ClassName
```

3482 Instances of abstract classes shall not be shown in DMTF object diagrams. If a variety of concrete
 3483 subclasses are applicable in a particular case, a concrete subclass shall be selected and explanatory text
 3484 be provided with the diagram stating that the other concrete classes are applicable as well.

3485 Instances shall be represented with a box that exhibits the two horizontal compartments. The top
 3486 compartment shall contain the instance label as defined for the InstanceLabel ABNF rule. The bottom
 3487 compartment may contain applicable properties that are needed to be illustrative, including properties that
 3488 are defined in the schema definition of adapted classes but are not referenced by the subject profile or a
 3489 referenced profile.

3490 For each applicable property, the property name and its value shall be listed using the format (in ABNF):

```
3491 PropertyEntry = PropertyName *WSP PropertyAssignment *WSP PropertyValue
3492 PropertyName = IDENTIFIER
3493 PropertyValue = initializer
3494 PropertyAssignment = "="
```

3495 **DEPRECATED**

3496 Minor revisions of profiles initially specified in compliance with version 1.0 of this guide may continue
 3497 using the colon as the assignment operator in property entries.

```
3498 PropertyAssignment = "=" / ":"
```

3499 **DEPRECATED**

3500 Methods should not be shown in DMTF object diagrams.

3501 If UFiT values are included in the object diagram, they should conform to [DSP0215](#).

3502 DMTF object diagrams shall be accompanied by descriptive text that explains the diagram and its
3503 pertinence.

3504 Associations shall be depicted as UML links. Associations with properties other than reference properties
3505 may be depicted as a separate UML object that contains the properties and is connected to the
3506 association link with a dashed line.

3507 DEPRECATED

3508 Minor revisions of profiles specified in compliance with version 1.0 of this guide may continue depicting
3509 association properties as a list below the association class name.

3510 DEPRECATED

3511 8.3.8 DMTF sequence diagram guidelines

3512 DMTF sequence diagrams are UML sequence diagrams (see [OMG UML Superstructure](#)) that satisfy the
3513 additional constraints defined in this subclause.

3514 DMTF sequence diagrams shall depict the interaction between CIM instances, in the form of method or
3515 operation calls and call returns.

3516 Lifelines in DMTF sequence diagrams shall be labeled using the same format as that defined for labeling
3517 objects in DMTF object diagrams, as defined by the `InstanceLabel` rule in 8.3.7.

3518 8.3.9 Designation of deprecated or experimental elements in diagrams

3519 Profiles may designate profile elements as experimental (see 7.18), and revisions of profiles may
3520 deprecate profile elements defined in a previous version (see 7.19).

3521 Profiles may refer to deprecated or experimental schema elements as part of class adaptations (see
3522 7.13.2.1), property requirement (see 7.13.2.8), or method requirements (see 7.13.3.2).

3523 In diagrams the depiction of respective deprecated or experimental elements, or of elements that depend
3524 on deprecated or experimental schema elements, should be designated using the following notational
3525 conventions:

3526 • Deprecated element – suffix the letter D in curly brackets:

3527 {D}

3528 • Experimental element – suffix the letter E in curly brackets:

3529 {E}

3530 9 Profile implementation requirements

3531 9.1 General

3532 Clause 9 defines the requirements for the implementation of one or more profiles. The primary target
3533 audience for this clause is implementers of profiles.

3534 9.2 Implementation requirements for a set of profiles

3535 9.2.1 General

3536 Typically, a profile is not implemented by itself but as part of the implementation of a set of profiles that is
3537 composed of one or more profiles selected by the implementer for implementation, and their referenced
3538 profiles. Such a set of profiles establishes a comprehensive management interface for a management
3539 domain that is a composition of the management domains addressed by the individual profiles.

3540 This is also the reason why the term "implementation" (see 3.30) is defined as "a WBEM server that
3541 implements applicable portions of one or more profiles", as opposed to profile implementation (see 3.67)
3542 that is defined as "a subset of an implementation that realizes the requirements of a particular profile in a
3543 particular profile implementation context".

3544 The term *implementation-required* is defined as follows: A profile or profile element is implementation-
3545 required if its implementation is required as part of the implementation of one or more profiles, namely

- 3546 • The profile or profile element is mandatory
- 3547 • The profile or profile element is conditional or conditional exclusive, and the either the condition
3548 is True, or the profile or profile element was selected to be implemented
- 3549 • The profile or profile element is optional and was selected to be implemented
- 3550 • The implementation type (see 7.13.2.5) is not abstract or embedded.

3551 NOTE The implementation requirements of abstract profiles or profile elements are taken into account by
3552 concrete elements that are based on them. Likewise, the implementation requirements of embedded
3553 profile elements are taken into account by the elements embedding them.

3554 An implementation (of a set of profiles) shall conform to the implementation requirements of these profiles
3555 and their referenced specifications.

3556 For a functioning implementation, the following activities need to be performed:

- 3557 • Determine the *implementation adaptation set* by applying the merge algorithm detailed in 9.4.
3558 The implementation adaptation set is composed of *implementation adaptations* (see 9.2.2).
- 3559 • Implement each implementation adaptation in the implementation adaptation set, conforming to
3560 the requirements detailed in 9.3.

3561 9.2.2 Implementation adaptation

3562 An implementation adaptation is an adaptation that is implementation-required for a particular profile
3563 implementation. It merges the requirements of base adaptations and of other requirements sources, such
3564 as the schema definition of the adapted class, the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1), or of registry
3565 elements, such as alert messages or metric definitions.

3566 An implementation adaptation does not contain requirements for optional elements that were not selected
3567 to be implemented. Such requirements are simply not merged into the implementation adaptation during
3568 processing of the merge algorithm (see 9.4).

3569 9.2.3 Profile implementation context

3570 It is very important to realize that a particular used profile (or, more specifically, the adaptations defined in
3571 the used profile) may need to be implemented separately for different references to that profile. The
3572 decision whether a used profile is implemented separately should be made by investigating whether the
3573 managed objects represented by adaptation instances controlled by respective profile implementations
3574 are different; if they are this is an indicator for separate profile implementations.

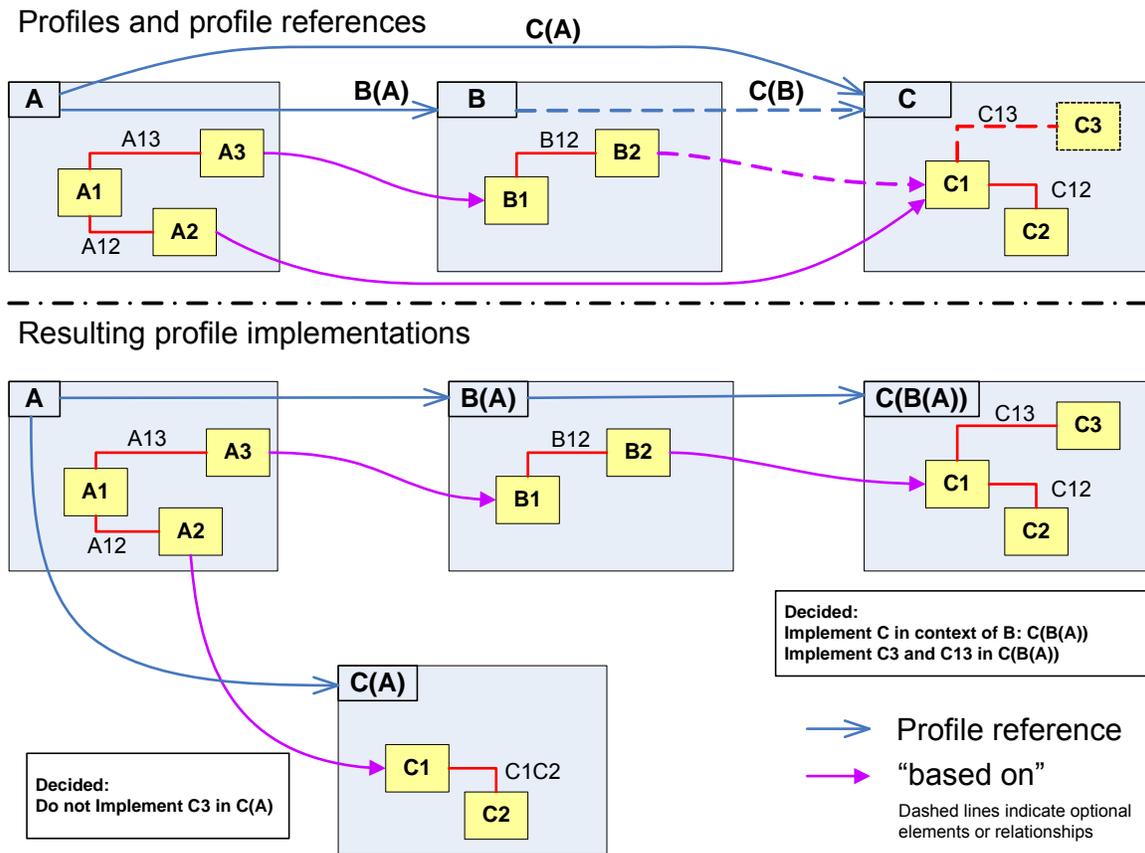
3575 A profile that is not referenced by other profiles is always implemented in its own context. This is typically
 3576 the case for autonomous profiles.

3577 A profile usage may establish a separate *profile implementation context* with specific implementation
 3578 requirements for the used profile; this recursively applies to profiles used by the used profile. For a
 3579 particular profile implementation the profile implementation context is characterized by the chain of profile
 3580 usages.

3581 The profile implementation context can be written by stating the name of the used profile that is
 3582 implemented, suffixed by the name of the using profile in parenthesis:

3583 If the context is a chain of profile usages, parenthesis are applied recursively. For example, a profile
 3584 implementation context of "A" indicates that profile A is implemented in its own profile
 3585 implementation context, a profile implementation context of "B(A)" indicates that profile B is
 3586 implemented in context of an implementation of profile A, and "C(B(A))" indicates that profile C is
 3587 implemented in the context of an implementation of profile B that in turn is implemented in the
 3588 context of an implementation of profile A.

3589 Figure 12 shows an example of a profile that references two other profiles, and the resulting profile
 3590 implementations.



3591

3592 **Figure 12 – Example of profiles and resulting profile implementations**

3593 The upper part of Figure 12 shows a set of profiles: Profile A references profile B and profile C as
 3594 mandatory profiles, and profile B also references profile C as an optional profile.

3595 The lower part of Figure 12 shows the resulting profile implementations in this example case: Profile A is
 3596 implemented for itself because it is selected for implementation, profile B is implemented in context of
 3597 profile A because it is a mandatory profile of profile A. Profile C is implemented twice — in context of
 3598 profile A and in context of profile B — because it is a mandatory profile of profile A, and because it is an
 3599 optional profile of profile B, and the decision was made to implement profile C in context of profile B.

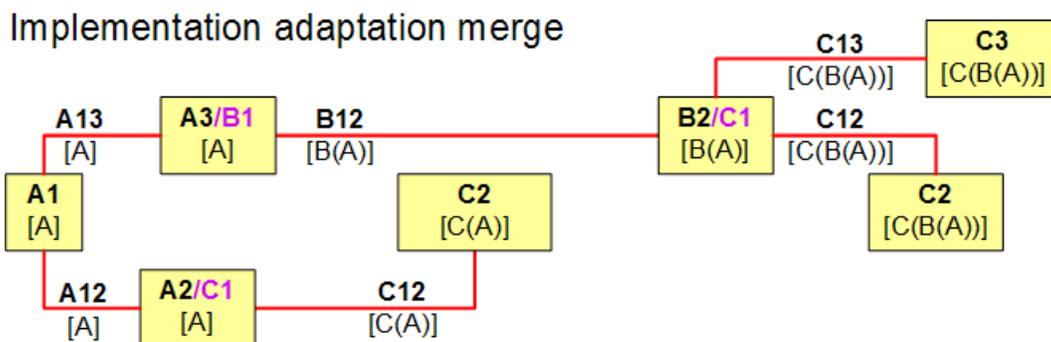
3600 In order to further substantiate the requirement for separate profile implementations, consider that
 3601 adaptation C1 defined by profile C is the base adaptation for adaptation A3 defined in profile A, as well as
 3602 for adaptation B2 defined in profile B. A3 as well as B2 introduce additional implementation requirements
 3603 which in general are different, and can be incompatible with each other. For example, A3 might adapt a
 3604 subclass of that adapted by C1, and might define property requirements for properties that are defined in
 3605 that subclass, whereas B2 might define method requirements that are incompatible with those of A3.

3606 In addition, as shown in Figure 12, for each profile implementation different decisions on optional
 3607 elements are possible. For the implementation of profile C in the context of that of profile A (depicted as
 3608 C(A)) it was decided not to implement adaptation C3, whereas for the implementation C(B(A)) it was
 3609 decided to implement adaptation C3.

3610 In order to distinguish implementation adaptations with different profile implementation contexts within the
 3611 implementation adaptation set they need to be qualified with their profile implementation context, that is,
 3612 each implementation adaptation is identified by the adaptation name and the profile implementation
 3613 context.

3614 Furthermore, for each implementation-required profile implementation, the implementation adaptations
 3615 need to be constructed by merging the requirements from base adaptations.

3616 Figure 13 shows an example of implementation adaptations that were created by merging the
 3617 requirements from adaptations from the profile implementations shown in Figure 12.



3618
 3619 **Figure 13 – Example of merging of adaptations into implementation adaptations**

3620 As shown in Figure 12, adaptation A3 defined in profile A is based on adaptation B1 defined in profile B.
 3621 Figure 13 shows the result of the merge process: For example, the merge of requirements from both
 3622 adaptations A3 and B1 in context of the implementation of profile A is shown as the merged
 3623 implementation adaptation A3/B1[A]. Likewise, because adaptation B2 defined in profile B is based on
 3624 adaptation C1 defined in profile C, the merge of requirements from adaptations B2 and C1 in context of
 3625 the implementation of profile B in context of that of profile A is shown as the merged implementation
 3626 adaptation B2/C1[B(A)].

3627 Note that the profile implementation context is determined for derived adaptations that are implemented,
 3628 but not for base adaptations that have an impact on those derived adaptations. For instance, in the
 3629 example shown in Figure 12, profile C does not show up in the profile implementation context [B(A)] of
 3630 adaptation B2/C1, even though profile C has an impact on that merged adaptation by means of base
 3631 adaptation C1.

3632 9.2.4 Implementation optimizations

3633 During the realization of implementation adaptations optimizations are possible. Any such optimizations
3634 go beyond the scope of this guide and are mentioned for informational purposes only.

3635 For example, if the implementation requirements do not diverge too much, it might be possible to realize
3636 two implementation adaptations with one common piece of implementing code that addresses the
3637 common requirements through a common path, and the small set of different requirements through
3638 different paths. For the example shown in Figure 13, that might be possible for C2[C(A)] and C2[C(B(A))].

3639 An additional potential for optimization is combining instances. For example, if two or more temperature
3640 sensors have identical capabilities in all aspects (including identical temperature sensor ranges), then
3641 these capabilities could be represented by one adaptation instance. Combining instances is an
3642 optimization that is visible to clients that generally reduces the ability to represent differences and thus
3643 should be applied with great care.

3644 9.2.5 Schema requirements

3645 Implementations shall use the highest version of any schema from the set of schemas required by any of
3646 the profiles in the set of profiles that are implemented; beyond that, implementations should use the most
3647 recently published minor version within the same major version of any required schema.

3648 9.3 Implementation requirements for implementation adaptations

3649 9.3.1 General

3650 The requirements of 9.3 apply for implementation adaptations² that are determined for an implementation
3651 by means of the merge algorithm detailed in 9.4.

3652 In this subclause the implementation requirements for implementation adaptations are listed.

3653 Keep in mind that the quantification "all" for required elements of implementation adaptations only
3654 comprises implementation-required elements (see 9.2.2). In other words, an implementation adaptation is
3655 already stripped of optional and conditional elements that were not selected or are not required to be
3656 implemented. Thus the quantification "all" each time refers to all respective elements of only the
3657 implementation adaptation, which are the implementation-required elements of the adapted class (and
3658 other implementation-required elements such as operation requirements, instance requirements and the
3659 like) that were determined by applying the merge algorithm.

3660 For implementation adaptations with an implementation type of "instantiated", the following requirements
3661 apply:

- 3662 • implement all properties², as detailed in 9.3.2
- 3663 • implement all methods² and operations², as detailed in 9.3.3
- 3664 • implement all instance requirements², as detailed in 9.3.4

3665 For implementation adaptations with an implementation type of "indication", the following requirements
3666 apply:

- 3667 • implement all properties², as detailed in 9.3.2

² Note that implementation adaptations are composed only of implementation-required elements; see the general remark in 9.3.1.

- 3668
- implement all indication-generation requirements², as detailed in 9.3.5

3669 For implementation adaptations with an implementation type of "embedded" or with an implementation
3670 type of "exception", the following requirements apply:

- 3671
- implement all properties², as detailed in 9.3.2

3672 **9.3.2 Implementation requirements for properties**

3673 For each implementation adaptation all properties² shall be implemented, conforming with all value
3674 requirements and constraints established by profiles and by the schema. In particular, the profile
3675 requirements for property values to reflect the situation of the represented (aspect of the) managed object
3676 shall be implemented.

3677 If a property is required by any of the profiles being implemented (see 9.2.1) with either the mandatory
3678 requirement level, or with the conditional or conditional exclusive requirement level and the condition
3679 being True, the property value shall not be Null when retrieved, except if specifically allowed by the profile
3680 establishing the requirement level. The non-Null value requirement does not apply for implemented
3681 optional properties.

3682 The values of non-implemented properties shall be Null when retrieved. This is even the case if the
3683 schema definition of a property defines a non-Null default value because a schema defined default value
3684 is an initialization constraint that applies at instance creation time only.

3685 **9.3.3 Implementation requirements for methods and operations**

3686 **9.3.3.1 General**

3687 For each implementation adaptation² with an implementation type of "instantiated" an implementation
3688 shall implement all methods², conforming with the method semantics defined by profiles and by the
3689 schema.

3690 For each implementation adaptation² with an implementation type of "instantiated" an implementation
3691 shall implement all operations², conforming with the operation semantics defined by profiles and by the
3692 operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1).

3693 The invocation of non-implemented operations and methods shall fail, indicating that the operation or
3694 method is not implemented.

3695 **9.3.3.2 Input parameters**

3696 **9.3.3.2.1 Input parameters for methods**

3697 An implementation shall implement all input parameters², accepting all input values as required by
3698 profiles, within the constraints and input value requirements defined by profiles and the schema. This
3699 applies likewise to property values of embedded CIM instances.

3700 For methods the concept of optional parameters is not defined, values for all parameters are mandatory;
3701 however, Null is a valid value. Note that profiles may define specific semantics to specific values of input
3702 parameters; see 7.13.3.2.2.

3703 If for a particular input parameter value requirements are not stated in any profile, the implementation
3704 may support all or a subset (including the case of not supporting any input value) of the admissible value
3705 set established by the schema definition of the input parameter, or in case of operations by the definition
3706 of the operation in the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1).

3707 In case a value subset is supported, and if clients provide input values outside of that value subset, a
3708 respective error shall be indicated. This applies likewise to values of properties in adaptation instances
3709 provided as input.

3710 **9.3.3.2 Input parameters for instance creation operations**

3711 For instance creation operations the rules for implementing property values of input instances, for
3712 initializing property values that are not provided, the operation semantics and error reporting requirements
3713 are specified in the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1) and in profiles (see 7.13.3.3.3 and
3714 7.13.2.11.2).

3715 Recall that CIM instances are not created by themselves, but are the representations of (aspects of)
3716 managed objects; for details, see 6.6. Thus as part of performing an instance creation operation the
3717 implementation shall create a managed object in (or add a respective existing one to) the managed
3718 environment such that the CIM instance representing that managed object is identical to the input
3719 instance with the value determination rules applied.

3720 If the implementation is unable to realize the instance creation in compliance with these rules, then it shall
3721 fail the instance creation operation and report a respective error.

3722 **9.3.3.3 Input parameters for instance modification operations**

3723 For instance modification operations the rules for implementing property values of input instances, for
3724 selecting properties for that input values are considered or disregarded, the operation semantics and
3725 error reporting requirements are specified in the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1) and in profiles
3726 (see 7.13.3.3.4 and 7.13.2.11.3).

3727 Recall that modifiable CIM instances are the representations of (aspects of) managed objects; for details,
3728 see 6.6. Thus as part of performing an instance modification operation the implementation shall modify
3729 the represented managed object in the managed environment such that the CIM instance representing
3730 the modified managed object is identical to the input instance.

3731 If the implementation is unable to realize the instance modification operation in compliance with these
3732 rules, then it shall fail the instance modification operation and report a respective error.

3733 **9.3.3.3 Output parameters**

3734 An implementation shall implement all output parameters, producing all output values within the
3735 constraints established by profiles, the schema and the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1), in
3736 accordance with the situation in the managed environment resulting from the method or operation
3737 execution. This applies likewise for return values.

3738 For methods the concept of optional parameters is not defined; values for all parameters are mandatory,
3739 but Null is a legal value. For operations, optional output parameters may be defined in the operations
3740 specification, in the sense that in some situations no output values are returned.

3741 **9.3.3.4 Error reporting requirements**

3742 If error reporting requirements² (see 7.13.3.3.6) are defined for a method or operation, and during the
3743 method or operation execution an error occurs, the implementation shall apply the error reporting
3744 requirements that address the error situation.

3745 An error reporting requirement is applied by sending all referenced standard error messages, and by
3746 returning the CIM status code. The CIM status code is either explicitly required as part of the error
3747 reporting requirement, or is implicitly required through the value of the CIMSTATUSCODE element of one
3748 or more of the standard error messages.

3749 If the error situation is addressed by more than one error reporting requirement, the implementation shall
3750 apply one of those error reporting requirements, as follows:

- 3751 • If a profile defines a relative order among the error reporting requirements, the implementation
3752 shall apply the error reporting requirements in that order.
- 3753 • If such an order is only established by the error reporting requirements of the operations
3754 specification (see 7.13.3.3.1), the implementation shall apply the error reporting requirements in
3755 that order.
- 3756 • If no order is defined, the implementation shall apply the error reporting requirements that most
3757 appropriately reports the error. The additional description provided along with the error reporting
3758 requirements may be used as a guideline for selecting for the most appropriate error reporting
3759 requirements.

3760 **9.3.4 Instance requirements**

3761 Implementations of adaptations with an implementation type of "instantiated" shall reflect the situation in
3762 the managed environment by representing (aspects of) managed objects by adaptation instances, as
3763 required by instance requirements.

3764 **9.3.5 Indication generation requirements**

3765 Implementations of adaptations with an implementation type of "indication" shall reflect the situation in the
3766 managed environment by complying with all indication-generation requirements (see 7.13.4.2),
3767 generating respective indications if the event that the indication is designed to report occurs. This applies
3768 likewise for indications reporting secondary events, such as lifecycle indications reporting changes of the
3769 CIM model as a result of prior changes in the managed environment. In addition, the requirements of the
3770 Indications profile (see [DSP1054](#)) apply.

3771 **9.4 Merge algorithm**

3772 **9.4.1 General**

3773 The purpose of the merge algorithm is determining — for a set of initially selected profile implementations
3774 and their dependent profile implementations — all required implementation adaptations plus all
3775 requirements that affect that adaptation implementation, namely

- 3776 • the requirements of the adapted class defined in the schema
- 3777 • the requirements from the adaptation itself, namely element requirements such as property
3778 requirements, method requirements and operation requirements — both with their error
3779 reporting requirements, and the instance requirements (or — in case of indications — the
3780 indication-generation requirements)
- 3781 • the respective requirements from base adaptations
- 3782 • the requirements from the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1)
- 3783 • the requirements from referenced registry elements

3784 The merge algorithm requires the repeated processing of profile implementation checks (see 9.4.3), each
3785 requiring repeated processing of adaptation implementation checks (see 9.4.4), in order to build the
3786 implementation adaptation set.

3787 The resulting implementation adaptation set contains — for a set of initially selected profile
3788 implementations and their dependent profile implementations — all implementation adaptations, each
3789 with all element requirements collected from the various sources listed above, and with all instance
3790 requirements or — in case of indication adaptations — indication-generation requirements.

3791 Optimizations are possible when realizing the implementation adaptations from the implementation
3792 adaptation set; see 9.2.4.

3793 9.4.2 Merge algorithm steps

3794 The merge algorithm starts with step 1):

- 3795 1) **Decision:** Select an initial desired set of profiles to be implemented.
- 3796 2) For each profile implementation selected in step 1), perform the profile implementation check as
3797 detailed in 9.4.3, in its profile implementation context (see 9.2.3).
- 3798 3) Inspect the resulting implementation adaptation set for possible implementation optimizations as
3799 described in 9.2.4.

3800 After performing step 3), the merge algorithm is completed.

3801 9.4.3 Profile implementation check

3802 A profile implementation check is always to be performed in a specific profile implementation context (see
3803 9.2.3).

- 3804 1) **Decision:** Select which optional and conditional³ features of the currently checked profile
3805 implementation are to be implemented; this will impact subsequent steps.
- 3806 2) For all conditional adaptations check the condition³, and if the condition is True, perform the
3807 adaptation implementation check (see 9.4.4), in the context of the currently checked profile
3808 implementation.
- 3809 3) **Decision:** Select which optional and which conditional adaptations (with a condition of False
3810 from step 2)) of the currently checked profile implementation are to be implemented. For
3811 selected adaptations perform the adaptation implementation check (see 9.4.4), in the context of
3812 the currently checked profile implementation.
- 3813 4) For base profiles of the currently checked profile implementation, perform the profile
3814 implementation check (described in this subclause), in the context of the currently checked
3815 profile implementation. This in effect causes the requirements of the base profile to be
3816 addressed as if they were requirements of the derived profile.
3817 NOTE Step 4) is necessary in order to pick up adaptations defined in the base profile that are not used
3818 as base adaptations, and thus require an independent implementation.
- 3819 5) For all conditional profiles check the condition³, and if the condition is True, perform the profile
3820 implementation check (described in this subclause) for the implementation of the referenced
3821 conditional profile, with the profile implementation context extended to the conditional profile.
- 3822 6) **Decision:** Select which optional profiles and which conditional profiles (with a condition of False
3823 from step 5) are to be implemented. For selected profile implementations perform the profile
3824 implementation check (described in this subclause) for the implementation of the referenced
3825 optional or conditional profiles, with the profile implementation context extended to the selected
3826 optional or conditional profile.
- 3827 7) **Decision:** Decide whether for the currently checked profile any scoped profiles are to be
3828 implemented. For selected profile implementations perform the profile implementation check
3829 (described in this subclause) for those profile implementations, with the profile implementation
3830 context extended to the selected scoped profile.

³ The determination of a condition might involve optional elements. If so, at this point it needs to be decided whether these optional element(s) is (are) to be implemented, and that decision needs to be retained in later steps.

3831 9.4.4 Adaptation implementation check

3832 An adaptation implementation check is performed for an adaptation in a specific profile implementation
3833 context (see 9.2.3). It either creates a new implementation adaptation with that profile implementation
3834 context in the implementation adaptation set, or amends an existing one, as follows:

- 3835 1) Merge the requirements as exposed by the schema definition of the adapted class. Merging
3836 means creating the implementation adaptation within the implementation adaptation set if it did
3837 not yet exist, and adding or refining the element requirements as exposed by the schema
3838 definition of the adapted class.
 - 3839 2) Merge the mandatory elements to the implementation adaptation (determined or created in step
3840 1)). Merging means adding or refining the element requirements with the requirements from the
3841 adaptation defined in the profile to be implemented.
 - 3842 3) For any conditional elements check the condition. For those conditional elements where the
3843 condition is True, as in step 2) merge the respective element requirements to the
3844 implementation adaptation.
 - 3845 4) **Decision:** Select which optional and conditional elements not addressed in step 3) are to be
3846 implemented, and — as in step 2) — merge the respective element requirements to the
3847 implementation adaptation.
- 3848 NOTE The potentially complex condition check in step 3) can be avoided for those conditional
3849 elements that are selected in step 3) anyway, by performing steps 3) and 4) concertedly.
- 3850 5) For any operation, merge the requirements from the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1).
 - 3851 6) If the subject adaptation is based on other adaptations, perform the adaptation implementation
3852 check (described in this subclause) for the direct base adaptations, using the profile
3853 implementation context of the profile defining the subject adaptation, and then — in the context
3854 of the profile defining the base adaptation — mark the implementation of the direct base
3855 adaptations as addressed by a derived adaptation. The last part is necessary in order to avoid
3856 picking up those requirements in a later execution of step 4) of the profile implementation check.

3857 9.5 Implementation of deprecated definitions

3858 Implementations shall conform to definitions of the schema, profiles and the operations specification (see
3859 7.13.3.3.1) regardless of whether or not they are deprecated. Clients should not rely on or exploit
3860 deprecated definitions, and they are encouraged to stop exploiting deprecated functionality as soon as
3861 possible.

3862 10 Profile specification requirements

3863 10.1 General

3864 Clause 10 defines the requirements for profile specifications. Profile specifications are documents
3865 containing the definition of one or more profiles in textual form.

3866 Clause 10 focuses on formal text document aspects. In addition, all requirements stated in clause 7 for
3867 profile definitions and the general conventions and guidelines for profile defined in clause 8 apply to
3868 profile specification documents.

3869 A profile specification published by DMTF shall conform to all requirements of this guide; in addition the
3870 requirements of [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#) apply. The conformance requirements for profiles and profile
3871 specifications are detailed in clause 5.

3872 10.2 Profile specification conventions

3873 10.2.1 Conventions for the specification of requirement levels

3874 In profile specifications, requirement levels (see 7.3) are stated using keywords as defined in this
3875 subclause.

- 3876 • The mandatory requirement level (see 7.3.2) shall be stated using the keyword "mandatory".
- 3877 • The conditional requirement level (see 7.3.4) shall be stated using the keyword "conditional"; in
3878 addition, the requirements described in 10.2.3 for the specification of the condition apply.
- 3879 • The conditional exclusive requirement level (see 7.3.5) shall be stated using the keyword
3880 "conditional exclusive"; in addition, the requirements described in 10.2.3 for the specification of
3881 the condition apply.
- 3882 • The optional requirement level (see 7.3.3) shall be stated using the keyword "optional".
- 3883 • The prohibited requirement level (see 7.3.6) shall be stated using the keyword "prohibited".

3884 10.2.2 Conventions for the specification of implementation types

3885 In profile specifications, the implementation types (defined for adaptations, see 7.13.2.5) are stated using
3886 keywords as defined in this subclause.

- 3887 • The "instantiated" implementation type shall be stated using the keyword "instantiated".
- 3888 • The "embedded" implementation type shall be stated using the keyword "embedded".
- 3889 • The "abstract" implementation type shall be stated using the keyword "abstract".
- 3890 • The "indication" implementation type shall be stated using the keyword "indication".
- 3891 • The "exception" implementation type shall be stated using the keyword "exception".

3892 10.2.3 Conventions for the specification of conditional elements

3893 This subclause defines requirements for the specification of conditional elements in profile specifications.

3894 10.2.3.1 General

3895 Conditions shall be defined using one of the mechanisms defined in 7.4.

3896 10.2.3.2 Conventions for the specification of conditional elements outside of tables

3897 In any text outside of tables the fact that an element is defined as conditional shall be phrased as follows,

```
3898 ConditionalPhrase = "The implementation of the " ElementName " "  
3899 ElementType " is " ConditionalFlavor "."  
  
3900 ElementName = PROFILE_IDENTIFIER / IDENTIFIER ; shall identify the conditional element  
  
3901 ElementType = "profile" / "feature" / "adaptation" / "property" / "method"  
3902 / "parameter"  
  
3903 ConditionalFlavor = "conditional" / "conditional exclusive"
```

3904 In cases where it is not possible to apply this phraseology, alternatively a condition and its consequence
3905 may be stated as a conditional sentence in the English language.

3906 The text defining the condition shall be phrased in the format of a `ConditionStatement` as detailed
3907 below:

3908 `ConditionStatement = "Condition:" *WSP ConditionSpecification`

3909 `ConditionSpecification` shall be an appropriate textual representation of the basic types of
3910 conditions and their combination using Boolean operators, as specified in 7.4.

3911 Examples:

- 3912 • "Condition: The Fan adaptation is implemented".
- 3913 • "Condition: The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented."
- 3914 • "Condition: The managed environment contains fans with simple sensors, or the managed
3915 environment contains fans with numeric sensors."
- 3916 • "Condition: Any of the following:
 - 3917 – The managed environment contains fans with simple sensors.
 - 3918 – The managed environment contains fans with numeric sensors."

3919 **10.2.3.3 Conventions for the specification of conditional elements within tables**

3920 Within tables, a conditional element shall be designated with the word "Conditional" (without additional
3921 text) within the table column indicating the requirement level, as follows:

3922 `ConditionInTable = "Conditional" / "Conditional exclusive"`

3923 The condition shall be specified in a corresponding cell within the Description column of the same table. If
3924 the text in the Description cell would exceed a reasonable amount of words (about 20 words), it shall be
3925 replaced by a reference to a separate subclause that defines the condition, following the conventions
3926 defined in 10.2.3.2.

3927 An example of the specification of a condition within a table is given in Table X-1.

3928 **10.2.4 Conventions for the specification of value constraints**

3929 As defined in 7.13.2.10, a profile may constrain property values or method parameter values to a single
3930 value or a set of values. Also, for string-typed properties, methods and parameters, profiles may specify a
3931 mechanism that conveys the format used for their values.

3932 In profile specifications, value constraints may be expressed in the form of ABNF, or in the form of a
3933 regular expression. This subclause details conventions to be applied if regular expressions are used.

3934 Table 3 provides examples of applications of the provisions in this subclause.

3935 If in a profile specification a format specification is stated in the form of a regular expression, it shall be
3936 preceded by an equivalent format definition stated in the form of normative text. The regular expression-
3937 based format definition shall follow, encompassed by brackets. Within the brackets the keyword "pattern"
3938 shall be used to identify the regular expression, followed by the regular expression as a quoted string and
3939 compliant with the regular expression syntax defined in Annex B. For an example, see
3940 `PermanentAddress` in Table 3.

3941 NOTE Regular expressions can be used in code that validates formats. Textual descriptions provide equivalent
3942 information suitable for human readers.

3943 Within tables, the name of the property or parameter is listed under a separate column, and the value
3944 constraint shall be expressed within the corresponding cell of the Description column in the form of a
3945 normative statement, as follows:

- 3946 • If the value set for a string property or parameter is constrained to just one value, that value
3947 shall be stated and a regular expression pattern should not be specified. For an example, see
3948 `OtherPortType` in Table 3.
- 3949 • For the specification of the value set of properties or parameters without a `Values` qualifier, a
3950 requirement for exactly one valid value shall be specified as follows: "Value shall be" or
3951 "Value shall match", followed by the value. For an example, see `PortNumber` in Table 3.
- 3952 • For the specification of the value set of properties or parameters without a `Values` qualifier, a
3953 requirement for a list of valid values shall be specified as follows: "Value shall match",
3954 followed by a list of values separated by vertical bars. For an example, see
3955 `SupportedMaximumTransmissionUnit` in Table 3.
- 3956 • For the specification of the value set of properties or parameters with a `Values` qualifier, a
3957 single valid value shall be specified as "Value shall be" or "Value shall match",
3958 followed by the element from the `ValueMap` value set and followed by the parenthesized
3959 corresponding (textual) element of the `Values` value set. For an example, see `PortType` in
3960 Table 3.
- 3961 • For the specification of the value set of a properties or parameters with a `Values` qualifier, a list
3962 of valid values shall be specified as "Value shall match", followed by a list of elements
3963 from the `ValueMap` value set separated by vertical bars and followed by a parenthesized list of
3964 corresponding elements from the `Values` value set separated by "or". For an example, see
3965 `LinkTechnology` in Table 3.

3966 NOTE The lists of values from the `ValueMap` value set and from the `Values` value set are specified separately.
3967 This allows the `ValueMap` value list to be a valid regular expression, enabling automatic generation of
3968 profile specification tables from a separate source (such as XML) that can also be used for testing. If
3969 elements from the `ValueMap` value set and the `Values` value set were mixed (for example,
3970 "ProtocolIFType matches 4096 (IP v4) | 4097 (IP v6), | 4098 (both)"), then the
3971 result is not a valid regular expression.

3972 Outside of tables, value constraints shall be expressed in the form of normative sentences, for example:

3973 "The value of the `BlockSize` property shall convey the formatted block or
3974 sector size, and shall always be 512."

3975 The examples listed above for the definition of value constraints within tables apply correspondingly, for
3976 example replacing the phrase "Value shall ..." with the phrase "The value of the xxx
3977 property shall ...".

3978 Some CIM classes define a separate property for the specification of valid formats of the value of another
3979 property. The second adaptation example in Table 3 shows a format definition for the `Name` property in a
3980 `StorageVolume` adaptation of the `CIM_StorageVolume` class with valid formats conveyed through the
3981 value of the `NameFormat` property.

3982 **Table 3 – Example of string property format definition**

<p>X-7 Implementation</p> <p>...</p> <p>X-7.4 Adaptation: <code>VirtualNetworkPort</code>: <code>CIM_NetworkPort</code></p> <p>This subclause defines the adaptation of the <code>CIM_NetworkPort</code> class for the representation of network ports in virtual systems.</p> <p>X-7.4.1 Implementation requirements</p> <p>Table X-11 lists the implementation requirements for the <code>VirtualNetworkPort</code> adaptation.</p>
--

Table X-11 – Adaptation: VirtualNetworkPort: CIM_NetworkPort

Element	Requirement	Description
...
UsageRestriction	Mandatory	Value shall be 2 (Front-end-only)
PortType	Mandatory	Value shall be 1 (Other)
OtherPortType	Mandatory	Value shall be "Dynamic port"
PortNumber	Mandatory	Value shall be 0
LinkTechnology	Mandatory	Value shall match 2 3 5 (Ethernet or IB or FDDI)
PermanentAddress	Mandatory	Value shall be formatted as 16 consecutive uppercase hexadecimal digits (pattern "[0123456789ABCDEF]{16}\$")
SupportedMaximumTransmissionUnit	Mandatory	Value shall be 1526 4096
...

X-7.6 Adaptation: StorageVolume: CIM_StorageVolume

X-7.6.1 Implementation requirements

Table X-12 lists the implementation requirements for the StorageVolume adaptation.

Table X-12 – Adaptation: StorageVolume: CIM_StorageVolume

Element	Requirement	Description
...
Name	Mandatory	See X-7.6.2.
NameFormat	Mandatory	Value shall be 7 8 9 (SNVM or NodeWWN or NAA)
...

X-7.6.2 Property: Name

Valid formats of the Name property are constrained by the value of the NameFormat property, as follows:

- If the value of the NameFormat property is 7 (SNVM), the value of the Name property shall convey the vendor name, product name and serial number of the storage volume as three strings separated by "+" characters. The vendor name shall have exactly 8 characters and the product name shall have exactly 16 characters. Both names may contain blanks as significant characters and if necessary shall be padded with blanks to match the required length. The serial number shall be formatted using uppercase hexadecimal digits (pattern "[A-Za-z]{8}\+[A-Za-z]{16}\+[0123456789ABCDEF]*\$").
- If the value of the NameFormat property is 9 (NAA), the value of the Name property shall convey the system's hardware ID as specified in T10 SPC and shall be formatted as 16 consecutive uppercase hex digits (pattern "[0123456789ABCDEF]{16}\$").
- If the value of the NameFormat property is 8 (NodeWWN), the value of the Name property shall convey the system's Fibre Channel WWN and shall be formatted as 8 consecutive uppercase hex digits (pattern "[0123456789ABCDEF]{8}\$").

...

3983 **10.2.4.1 Conventions for the specifications of default property values**

3984 If a profile defines a default value for a property (see 7.13.2.9), that shall be specified using the following
3985 format:

3986 `PropertyDefaultValuePhrase = "Default value is " value "."`

3987 **10.2.4.2 Conventions for the specification of reference multiplicities**

3988 The specification of references in association adaptations shall include text specifying the multiplicity of
3989 the reference if the schema defined multiplicity is further constrained by the profile; see 7.13.2.8.

3990 The format is

3991 `MultiplicitySpecification = "Multiplicity: " MultiplicityValue`

3992 **DEPRECATED**

3993 Minor revisions of profiles initially specified in compliance with version 1.0 of this guide may continue
3994 using the word "cardinality" in place of "multiplicity".

3995 **DEPRECATED**

3996 `MultiplicityValue` shall specify the multiplicity, as follows:

3997 `"1"` indicates that exactly one instance is referenced

3998 `"*"` indicates that 0 or more instances are referenced

3999 `"m..n"` indicates that m to n instances are referenced, where m is 0 or a positive integer and n is
4000 a positive integer or "*" (representing unlimited)

4001 If no multiplicity is specified in the profile, the multiplicity defined in the schema definition of the reference
4002 applies; this may be emphasized by explicitly stating "Reference multiplicity conforms to
4003 the schema definition".

4004 Note that multiplicities of references are specified in the context of a class adaptation, and that
4005 multiplicities of references in different adaptations of the same association may be different.

4006 **10.3 Profile specification structures**

4007 **10.3.1 General**

4008 This guide defines a choice of two structures for profile specifications: The condensed structure and the
4009 traditional structure.

4010 The condensed profile specification structure should be favored for new profile specifications that are
4011 originally created in conformance to this guide.

4012 Revisions of existing profiles may continue to use the traditional structure, and they may apply a mixture
4013 of both structures with respect to the definition of indications.

4014 **NOTE** The last rule was established to enable revisions of existing profiles to conform with provisions defined by
4015 this guide with respect to the definition of indication requirements, without requiring these revisions having
4016 to conform with other provisions of this guide.

4017 **10.3.2 Condensed profile specification structure**

4018 The condensed profile specification structure provides for a comprehensive definition of class adaptations
 4019 as part of the "Implementation" clause; thus, it condenses information into the "Implementation" clause
 4020 that with version 1.0 of this guide was spread over the "CIM elements" clause, the "Methods" clause, and
 4021 the "Implementation" clause.

4022 In the condensed profile specification structure, the location for the table listing all class adaptations
 4023 defined by a profile is in the "Synopsis" clause. This enables a straight forward definition of class
 4024 adaptations with a direct entry path through the "Synopsis" clause that provides the overview information
 4025 and tables with forward references to subclauses of the "Implementation" clause that provide detailed
 4026 implementation information for each adaptation.

4027 **DEPRECATED**

4028 **10.3.3 Traditional profile specification structure**

4029 **10.3.3.1 General**

4030 Minor revisions of profiles initially specified in compliance with version 1.0 of this guide may continue
 4031 using the traditional profile specification structure as defined in this subclause.

4032 The traditional profile specification structure originally defined in version 1.0 of this guide spreads the
 4033 entry information to a profile over the "Synopsis" clause and the "CIM Elements" clause. The "CIM
 4034 Elements" clause typically contains back references to subclauses of the "Implementation" and "Methods"
 4035 clauses that provide detail information.

4036 With version 1.1 of this guide the traditional structure was established to allow for revisions of existing
 4037 profile specifications originally created in conformance with version 1.0 of this guide to remain compliant
 4038 to this guide without structural changes.

4039 Revisions of existing profiles may continue to use the traditional structure, and may apply a mixture of
 4040 both structures with respect to the definition of indications.

4041 **10.3.3.2 Specific requirements for DMTF class diagrams in traditional profile specifications**

4042 The requirements in this subclause apply in addition to those specified in 8.3.6.

4043 Each profile specification in profile specifications applying the traditional profile structure shall contain one
 4044 DMTF profile class diagram that depicts the central elements of the management interface defined by the
 4045 subject profile by showing profiled classes and associations defined by the subject profile or by a
 4046 referenced profile (see 7.9). That DMTF profile class diagram shall have a label formatted as follows:

4047 `DiagramLabel = ProfileName ": Profile class diagram"`

4048 The schema prefix (for example, "CIM_") shall be omitted from names of classes defined in a DMTF-
 4049 maintained CIM schema. Prefixes should be shown if the profile defines "profile classes" that are not
 4050 defined in a DMTF-maintained CIM schema.

4051 Profile classes defined by the subject profile shall be represented with a box that exhibits two horizontal
 4052 compartments.

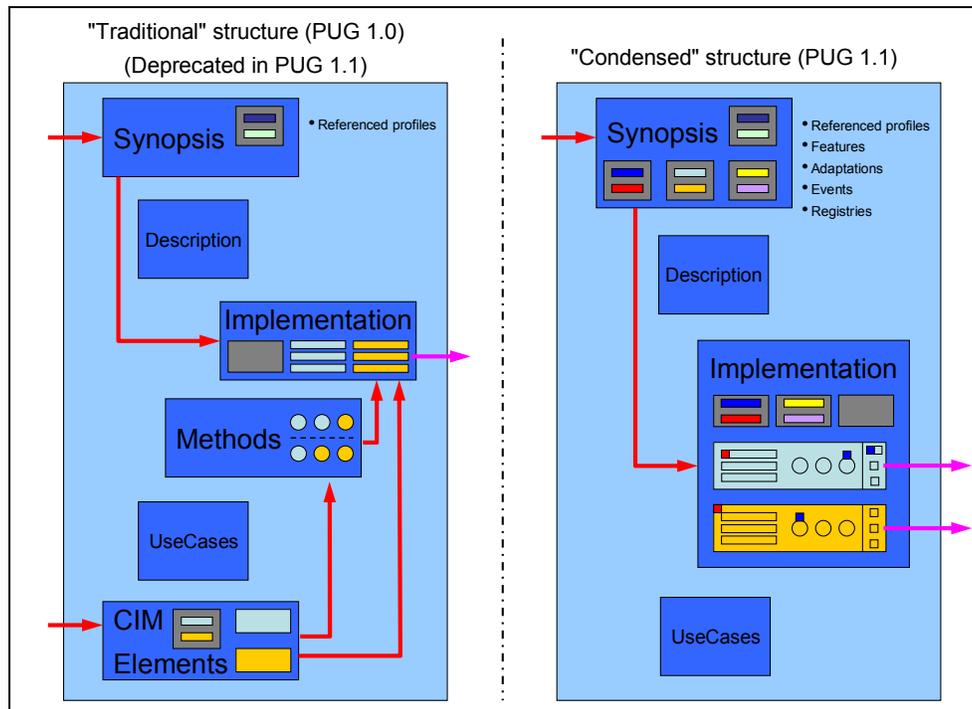
4053 The top compartment shall contain the "profile class" name as defined in 7.13, including the case where
 4054 the name is in the deprecated format using a class name and an optional modifier.

4055 If a subject profile refers to a class adaptation defined in a referenced profile, the lower compartment shall
 4056 contain the string:

- 4057 `Reference = "(See " ProfileDesignator ")"`
- 4058 `ProfileDesignator = ScopingProfileDesignator /`
- 4059 `ReferencingProfileDesignator / SpecificProfileDesignator`
- 4060 `ScopingProfileDesignator = "scoping profile"`
- 4061 `ReferencingProfileDesignator = "referencing profile"`
- 4062 `SpecificProfileDesignator = RegisteredProfileName [" profile"]`
- 4063 `RegisteredProfileName` is the registered profile name of the referenced profile.
- 4064 The depiction of "profile classes" shall not include properties or methods. Inheritance should only be
4065 shown if the profile adapts a class and its superclass.
- 4066 NOTE Eliminating properties and methods eliminates the risk that these elements are specified differently in the
4067 diagram and the text format included in profile specifications.
- 4068 The depiction of an association shall be labeled with the association adaptation name. If the adaptation of
4069 an association is defined by a referenced profile, the label for that association shall contain a reference to
4070 the referenced profile, using the format defined by the `Reference` ABNF rule.
- 4071 If a profile defines multiple adaptations of the same adapted class for multiple purposes, then each
4072 adaptation should be shown separately.
- 4073 The depiction of association adaptations shall show multiplicities. Note that these multiplicities, which are
4074 the multiplicities as exposed by the association adaptation, can be constrained beyond those defined for
4075 the adapted association in the schema. For example, if a profile in an association adaptation requires a
4076 multiplicity of 1-n, but the schema defined multiplicity is 0-n, then the multiplicity shown in the class
4077 diagram shall reflect the narrowed multiplicity required by the association adaptation.
- 4078 **DEPRECATED**
-

4079 **10.3.4 Usage of profile specification structures**

4080 The two profile specification structures are depicted in Figure 14.



4081

4082

Figure 14 – Traditional and condensed profile structures

4083 On the left side of Figure 14, the major clauses are shown with the traditional profile specification
 4084 structure applied. Note the two entry paths into the profile, one following through the "Synopsis" clause,
 4085 and the other one following through the "CIM elements" clause.

4086 On the right side of Figure 14, the major clauses are shown with the condensed profile structure applied.
 4087 Note that there is only one entry path into the profile, and that adaptations are comprehensively organized
 4088 within the "Implementation" clause, with all pertinent information required for the implementation of a
 4089 particular adaptation presented within one subclause. The blue and red colored squares indicate that the
 4090 implementation of some elements is required only as the "blue" or the "red" features are implemented.

4091 **10.4 Requirements for profile specification clauses**

4092 **10.4.1 General**

4093 The requirements for profile specification clauses differ with the structure chosen for the subject profile;
 4094 see 10.3. Table 4 lists the profile specification clauses in the order they shall appear in profile
 4095 specifications, along with references to subclauses of this guide or documents referenced by this guide
 4096 that detail the requirements for the specification of respective clauses in profile specifications.

4097

Table 4 – Requirements for profile specification clauses

Clause name	Condensed structure	Traditional structure
Scope	Required, see ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2 , 6.2.1.	

Normative references	Required, see ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2 , 6.2.2.	
Terms and definitions	Required, see 10.4.3 and ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2 , 6.3.1.	
Symbols and abbreviated terms	Required, see ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2 , 6.3.2.	
Conformance	Optional, see 10.4.4.	
Synopsis	Required, see 10.4.3. Requirements differ based on the chosen structure.	
Description	Required, see 10.4.6.	
Implementation	Required, see 10.4.7. Requirements differ based on the chosen structure.	
Methods	Prohibited, content covered in "Implementation" clause; see 10.4.7.	Required, see 10.4.8.
Use cases	Required, see 10.4.9.	
CIM elements	Prohibited, content covered in "Implementation" clause; see 10.4.7.	Required, see 10.4.10.

4098 Spelling of clause names and subclause names shall follow normal English grammar rules. Arbitrary
 4099 capitalization of words should be avoided.

4100 **10.4.2 Requirements for the numbering of profile specification clauses and subclauses**

4101 [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#) requires clauses and subclauses to be numbered.

4102 An organization may opt to "demote" the clauses to subclauses at a lower heading level. For example,
 4103 clause "6 Synopsis" may become subclause "8.6 Synopsis" or "8.2.6 Synopsis" within a larger
 4104 aggregating document. However, the relative heading numbering shall be maintained at respective lower
 4105 levels (that is, all headings are demoted by the same number of heading levels), and all clauses starting
 4106 with the "Synopsis" clause shall be provided. This allows embedding profile specifications in a larger
 4107 document while preserving a recognizable profile specification format for readers.

4108 **10.4.3 Requirements for the specification of the "Terms and definitions" clause**

4109 Each profile specification shall have a "Terms and definitions" clause.

4110 The "Terms and definitions" clause shall be specified as defined in [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#), 6.3.1 and
 4111 Appendix D.

4112 NOTE [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#) and other ISO documents establish rigid rules with respect to the capitalization
 4113 of terms. Generally, terms are required to be in lowercase unless otherwise required by English grammar
 4114 rules.

4115 The "Terms and definitions" clause shall contain the text stated in Table 5 immediately after the heading.

4116 **Table 5 – Common text for the "Terms and definitions" clause of profile specifications**

The verbal phrases "shall" ("required"), "shall not", "should" ("recommended"), "should not" ("not recommended"), "may", "need not" ("not required"), "can" and "cannot" in this document are to be interpreted as described in [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#), Annex H. The verbal phrases in parenthesis are alternatives for the preceding verbal phrase, for use in exceptional cases when the preceding verbal phrase cannot be used for linguistic reasons. Note that [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#), Annex H specifies additional alternatives. Occurrences of such additional alternatives shall be interpreted in their normal English meaning.

The terms "clause", "subclause", "paragraph", and "annex" in this document are to be interpreted as described in [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#), Clause 5.

The terms "normative" and "informative" in this document are to be interpreted as described in [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#), Clause 3. In this guide, clauses, subclauses or annexes indicated with "(informative)" as well as notes and examples do not contain normative content.

The terms defined in [DSP0004](#), [DSP0223](#) and DSP1001 apply to this profile.

4117 **10.4.4 Requirements for the specification of the "Conformance" clause**

4118 The specification of a conformance clause is optional.

4119 Generally, the conformance definitions defined by this guide (see clause 5) apply.

4120 Profiles may specify additional conformance rules for implementations beyond those required in 5.2; this
4121 guide does not define rules on how to define such conformance rules in profiles.

4122 **10.4.5 Requirements for the specification of the "Synopsis" clause**

4123 This subclause defines requirements for the "Synopsis" clause in profile specifications.

4124 **10.4.5.1 General**

4125 Each profile specification shall have a "Synopsis" clause.

4126 The "Synopsis" clause of a profile specification shall conform to the rules defined in subclauses 10.4.5.4
4127 to 10.4.5.8.

4128 **10.4.5.2 Requirements for the sequence of definitions in the "Synopsis" clause**

4129 The definitions in the "Synopsis" clause shall be in the following sequence:

- 4130 • the profile attributes, as defined in 10.4.5.4
- 4131 • the summary, as defined in 10.4.5.5
- 4132 • the table of profile references, as defined in 10.4.5.6
- 4133 • the tables of registry references, as defined in 10.4.5.7
- 4134 • the table of features, as defined in 10.4.5.8
- 4135 • the table of adaptations, as defined in 10.4.5.9
- 4136 • the table of use cases, as defined in 10.4.5.10

4137 Some of these definitions are only required if the corresponding elements are defined in the profile, and
4138 some are placed elsewhere when the traditional structure is used by the profile specification; this is
4139 detailed in the referenced subclauses.

4140 **10.4.5.3 Requirement for separate subclauses within the "Synopsis" clause**

4141 NOTE [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#) requires that no normative text be put at the beginning of a clause if that clause
 4142 contains subclauses (to avoid "hanging" paragraphs); this is the reason for requiring separate subclauses
 4143 in the case that any subclause is defined within the "Synopsis" clause. Such subclauses might be required,
 4144 for example, because table cell space requirements are exceeded in tables required by other subclauses
 4145 of 10.4.5, or because the definition of the scoping algorithm requires a separate subclause.

4146 Consequently, if any of the definitions within the "Synopsis" clause of a profile specification requires a
 4147 separate subclause, then each of the definitions listed above needs to be put in a separate subclause
 4148 within the Synopsis clause.

4149 **10.4.5.4 Requirements for the specification of profile attributes**

4150 **10.4.5.4.1 General**

4151 If the profile attributes are specified in a separate subclause within the "Synopsis" clause (see 10.4.5.3),
 4152 that subclause shall be named "Profile attributes".

4153 Profile attributes shall be listed as a sequence of attribute statements. This sequence of statements
 4154 should be placed first in the "Synopsis" clause.

4155 The sequence of attribute statements and their format in ABNF is defined by the "Attribute statement"
 4156 column of Table 6; corresponding values in the "Requirements" column refer to subclauses of clause 7
 4157 that provide details about the respective profile attributes. In a profile specification the sequence of
 4158 attribute statements should not be formatted as a table, but as a contiguous sequence of attribute value
 4159 statements that are in the sequence and format detailed in Table 6.

4160 **Table 6 – Requirements for the specification of profile attributes**

Attribute statement (ABNF)	Requirement
"Profile name:" WS RegisteredProfileName RegisteredProfileName shall be the registered profile name; see 7.6.2.	Required.
"Version:" WS RegisteredProfileVersion RegisteredProfileVersion shall be the registered profile version; see 7.6.3.	Required.
"Organization:" WS RegisteredOrganizationName RegisteredOrganizationName shall be the registered organization name; see 7.6.4.	Required.
"Abstract indicator:" WS AbstractProfileIndicator AbstractProfileIndicator shall be "True" for abstract profiles (see 7.10.1), and "False" otherwise. Default: "False".	Required for abstract profiles.
"Profile type:" WS ProfileType ProfileType shall be "autonomous" for autonomous profiles (see 7.8.2), and "component" for component profiles (see 7.8.3).	Required.
"Schema name:" WS SchemaName SchemaName shall be the schema name; see 7.7.3. Default: "CIM".	Optional.
"Schema version:" WS SchemaVersion SchemaVersion shall be the schema version; see 7.7.2.	Required unless "Schema:" is used.

For experimental schemas, the value should be suffixed with "(Experimental)"	
"Schema organization:" WS SchemaOrganization SchemaOrganization shall be the schema organization; see 7.7.4. Default: "DMTF".	Optional .
"Schema:" WS [SchemaOrganization WS] SchemaName *WS SchemaVersion SchemaOrganization, SchemaName and SchemaVersion shall be set as defined above in this table. Alternative to the specification of the triplet "Schema name", "Schema version" and "Schema organization" that should be preferred if multiple schemas are referenced.	Optional.
"Central class adaptation:" WS CentralClassAdaptationName CentralClassAdaptationName shall be the name of the central class adaptation; see 7.9.3.2.	Required.
"Scoping class adaptation:" WS ScopingClassAdaptationName ScopingClassAdaptationName shall be the name of the scoping class adaptation; see 7.9.3.3.	Required for component profiles.
"Scoping algorithm:" WS ScopingPath For ScopingPath, see 10.4.5.4.2.	Required for component profiles.
NOTE Profile attributes shall be listed in normal text font, with the profile attribute names (the initial literal up to and including the colon) highlighted in bold font; see also the example in A.2.	

4161 **10.4.5.4.2 Scoping path**

4162 ScopingPath shall be the scoping path; see 7.9.3.4. It shall be specified as follows:

- 4163 • If the scoping path between central class adaptation and scoping class adaptation is composed of
4164 only one association adaptation, ScopingPath shall be the name of the association adaptation.
- 4165 • Otherwise, the definition of the scoping path shall be placed in a separate subclause of the
4166 "Synopsis" clause, immediately after the "Profile attributes" subclause, and be named "Scoping
4167 path". In this case, ScopingPath shall have the form "See " SubclauseNumber, where
4168 SubclauseNumber is the number of the scoping path subclause. In the scoping path subclause the
4169 scoping path shall be stated sequentially listing all adaptations of ordinary classes and associations
4170 that compose the scoping path, starting with the central class adaptation and ending with the scoping
4171 class adaptation.

4172 An example of the specification of profile attributes is provided in A.2.

4173 **10.4.5.5 Requirements for the specification of the summary**

4174 If the summary is specified in a separate subclause within the "Synopsis" clause (see 10.4.5.3), that
4175 subclause shall be named "Synopsis".

4176 The first paragraph of the summary shall briefly summarize the purpose of the profile such that it may be
4177 used in other documents to describe the subject profile.

4178 Further paragraphs may provide more detailed summary information, including text that describes the
4179 usage of the central and the scoping class adaptations.

4180 If the subject profile is an abstract profile, the following statement shall be included as the last paragraph
 4181 at the end of the summary:

4182 "This abstract profile shall not be directly implemented; implementations shall be based on a
 4183 profile that is derived from this profile."

4184 An example of a summary is provided in A.2.

4185 **10.4.5.6 Requirements for the specification of the table of profile references**

4186 If the table of profile references is specified in a separate subclause within the "Synopsis" clause (see
 4187 10.4.5.3), that subclause shall be named "Profile references".

4188 If the subject profile references other profiles, the requirements for profile references shall be listed in a
 4189 table of profile references, as defined in this subclause. In that table each profile reference shall conform
 4190 to the requirements in 7.9.

4191 The table of profile references shall be labeled: "Profile references". In Table 7, requirements for columns
 4192 in the table of profile references are defined. Each required column is described by an entry in the list
 4193 provided in Table 7. Each list entry starts with the required name of the table column in **bold face**,
 4194 followed by a dash and the requirements for cells under that column.

4195 **Table 7 – Requirements for columns of the table of profile references**

<p>Profile reference name – Cell values shall state the name of the profile reference within the subject profile; see 7.9.1.</p> <p>Profile name – Cell values shall state the registered name of the referenced profile; see 7.9.1.3.</p> <p>Organization – Cell values shall state the registered organization of the referenced profile; see 7.9.1.3.</p> <p>Version – Cell values shall state the value of the major and the minor version identifier of the registered version of the referenced profile that is minimally required by the subject profile; see 7.9.1.3.</p> <p>Relationship – Cell values shall state the type of the profile reference; see 7.9.1.2.</p> <p>Description – Cell values shall conform to the following rules:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – A short description of the referenced profile and its relationship to the subject profile shall be provided. The short description should focus on the use of the referenced profile in the context of the subject profile. – For conditional profiles the condition shall be specified using one of the mechanisms specified in 7.4. – If the text in the "Description" cell would exceed a reasonable amount of words (about 20 words), the description shall be put in a separate subclause of the "Synopsis" clause that is referenced from the cell.
--

4196 If the subject profile does not reference other profiles, this shall be stated using the phrase "No references
 4197 to other profiles are defined in this profile." In this case, the table shall not be included.

4198 An example of a table of profile references is provided in Annex A.2.

4199 **10.4.5.7 Requirements for the specification of the tables of registry references**

4200 If the tables of registry references are specified in a separate subclause within the "Synopsis" clause (see
 4201 10.4.5.3), that subclause shall be named "Registry references".

4202 If the subject profile references message registries, the message registry references shall be listed in a
 4203 table of message registry references, as defined in this subclause. The table of message registry
 4204 references shall be labeled: "Message registry references".

4205 If the subject profile references metric registries, the metric registry references shall be listed in a table of
 4206 metric registry references, as defined in this subclause. The table of metric registry references shall be
 4207 labeled: "Metric registry references".

4208 In Table 8 requirements for columns in tables of registry references are defined. Each required column is
 4209 described by an entry in the list provided in Table 8. Each list entry starts with the required name of the
 4210 table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the requirements for cells under that column.

4211 **Table 8 – Requirements for columns of the tables of registry references**

<p>Registry reference name – Cell values shall state the name of the registry reference within the subject profile; see 7.9.1.</p> <p>Registry identifier – Cell values shall state the identification of the referenced registry; see 7.12.</p> <p>Organization – Cell values shall state the name of the organization that owns the referenced registry; see 7.12.</p> <p>Version – Cell values shall state the version of the referenced registry; see 7.12.</p> <p>Description – Cell values should provide a description of the use of referenced registry within the subject profile; see 7.12.</p> <p>The following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – If the value in any Description cell would exceed a reasonable amount of words (about 20 words), a separate subclause shall be provided within the "Implementation" clause, and the description shall be provided as part of that separate subclause. The separate subclause shall be referenced from the table entry, as follows: <p style="padding-left: 40px;">"See" WS SubclauseNumber ". "</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">SubclauseNumber is the number of the separate subclause.</p>
--

4212 **10.4.5.8 Requirements for the specification of the table of features**

4213 If the table of features is specified in a separate subclause within the "Synopsis" clause (see 10.4.5.3),
 4214 that subclause shall be named "Features".

4215 If the subject profile defines features (see 7.15), these shall be listed in a table of features, as defined in
 4216 this subclause.

4217 NOTE Both the condensed and the traditional profile specification structure provide for the definition of features,
 4218 enabling the definition of features in revisions of existing profile specifications (originally written in
 4219 compliance to version 1.0 of this guide) by upgrading to version 1.1 of this guide. However, note that the
 4220 upgrade may require minor formal adjustments of the original version to comply with version 1.1 of this
 4221 guide.

4222 The table of features shall be labeled: "Features". In Table 9 requirements for columns in tables of
 4223 features are defined. Each required column is described by an entry in the list provided in Table 9. Each
 4224 list entry starts with the required name of the table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the
 4225 requirements for cells under that column.

4226 **Table 9 – Requirements for columns of the table of features**

<p>Feature name – Cell values shall state the name of the feature; see 7.15.3.</p> <p>Granularity – Cell values shall state whether the feature can be implemented for the profile as a whole, or for specific adaptation instances.</p> <p>The following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – If the feature can be implemented for the profile as a whole, the Granularity cell value shall be
--

"profile".

- If the feature can be implemented for specific adaptation instances, the Granularity cell value shall be the name of the adaptation, followed by "instance".

Requirement – Cell values shall state the requirement level of the feature.

The following rules apply:

- If the feature is conditional, the cell value shall be "Conditional".
- If the feature is conditional exclusive, the cell value shall be "Conditional exclusive".
- If the feature is optional, the cell value shall be "Optional".

Description – Cell values shall provide a description of the feature.

The following rules apply:

- The feature definition subclause in the "Implementation" clause (see 10.4.7.3) shall be referenced. No other text should be added.

4227 If the specified profile does not define features, the following text shall be stated: "No features are defined
4228 in this profile." In this case, the table shall not be included.

4229 An example of a table of features is provided in A.2.

4230 **10.4.5.9 Requirements for the specification of the table of adaptations**

4231 The adaptations (see 7.13) defined in the subject profile shall be listed in a table of adaptations.

4232 The placement of the table depends on the profile specification structure that is applied by the subject
4233 profile, as follows:

4234 If the traditional profile specification structure is applied by the subject profile, the table of
4235 adaptations shall be specified in the "Overview" subclause of the "CIM elements" clause (see
4236 10.4.10.2), and the requirements for a table of adaptations as part of the "Synopsis" clause as
4237 specified in the remaining part of this subclause do not apply.

4238 If the condensed profile specification structure is applied by the subject profile, a table of adaptations
4239 shall be specified as part of the "Synopsis" clause. All class adaptations (including the adaptations of
4240 ordinary classes, of association classes, and of indication classes) defined by the subject profile shall
4241 be listed in the table of adaptations.

4242 If the table of adaptations is specified in a separate subclause within the "Synopsis" clause (see 10.4.5.3),
4243 that subclause shall be named "Adaptations".

4244 The table of adaptations shall be labeled: "Adaptations". In Table 10, requirements for columns in the
4245 table of adaptations are defined. Each required column is described by an entry in the list provided in
4246 Table 10. Each list entry starts with the required name of the table column in **bold face**, followed by a
4247 dash and the requirements for cells under that column.

4248 **Table 10 – Requirements for columns of the table of adaptations**

Adaptation – Cell values shall state the name of the adaptation; see 7.13.

The following rules apply:

- If an adaptation is based on other adaptations, the cell in the "Adaptation" column shall span all the cells in the other columns that are related to the specified adaptation.

Elements – Cells pertaining to elements of one adaptation are specified in separate subcells that are spanned by

the cell in the "Adaptation" column.

The following rules apply:

- The first subcell shall contain the name of the adapted class.
- If base adaptations are defined, these may be stated in subsequent subcells. This should only be done for adaptations that are not described in a separate adaptation-specific subclause, as detailed with the rules for the Description column.

The following ABNF defined format applies:

```
AdaptationReference = [ ProfileName "::" ] AdaptationName
```

If a base adaptation is defined in a referenced profile, then `ProfileRefName` shall be the profile reference name (see 7.9.1). `AdaptationName` shall be the name of the base adaptation

Requirement – Cell values shall state the requirement level for the adaptation; see 10.2.1.

The following rules apply:

- If an adaptation is based on other adaptations, and different requirement levels apply, these shall be specified in separate cells in this column; however, within the scope of a cell in the "Adaptation" column, if all base adaptations listed in corresponding cells in the "Elements" column are required with the same requirement level, the respective subcells in the "Requirement" column may be collapsed into one cell containing the common requirement level.
- If the implementation type (see 7.13.2.5) of an adaptation is "abstract", the cell shall contain a statement indicating that the requirement level is defined in derived adaptations.

Description – Cell values shall provide a description of the adaptation.

The following rules apply:

- Unless fitting into a reasonable space within the table cell (about 20 words), the adaptation description should be provided in a separate subclause of the "Adaptations" subclause within the "Implementation" clause; see 10.4.7.4.3. The adaptation specific subclause shall be referenced from the table entry, as follows:

```
"See" AdaptationSubclauseNumber "."
```

`AdaptationSubclauseNumber` shall be the number of the adaptation-specific subclause.

- If the description is provided within the table cell, it shall state the implementation type.
- If no requirements are defined beyond those defined in the schema definition of the adapted class, this may be indicated by the phrase:

```
"See CIM schema definition."
```

- If present, the subcells for the descriptions of base adaptations shall contain a reference to the subclause or profile defining the base adaptation, as follows:

```
"See " BaseReference "."
```

where `BaseReference` either refers to the subclause that describes the base adaptation, or is the internal document reference to the profile that defines the base adaptation.

4249 The adaptation table shall be subdivided into two table sections that are named as follows:

- 4250 • "Instantiated and embedded class adaptations"
- 4251 • "Indications and exceptions"

4252 Each table section shall be preceded by a row that spans all columns and contains the section name. The
 4253 table sections shall contain the entries for adaptations defined by the profile with respective
 4254 implementation types (see 7.13.2.5).

4255 The sequence in which adaptations are listed within each of these table sections is not defined in this
 4256 guide. Profiles may use any reasonable approach for that, for example an alphabetical sequence or an
 4257 order implied by dependencies of the adaptations. Also, the sequence as listed in the table of adaptations
 4258 may differ from the sequence of referenced adaptation-specific subclauses (see 10.4.7.4).

4259 If a profile does not define adaptations for indications and/or exceptions, the table still shall contain the
 4260 "Indications and exceptions" table section, with one entry stating that no adaptations for indications or
 4261 exceptions are defined.

4262 An example of a table of adaptations is provided in A.2.

4263 **10.4.5.10 Requirements for the specification of the table of use cases**

4264 A table of use cases is only required if the condensed profile specification structure is applied by the
 4265 subject profile.

4266 In this case, the table of use cases shall be specified as part of the "Synopsis" clause. All use cases
 4267 defined by the subject profile within the "Use cases" clause (see 10.4.9) shall be listed in the table of use
 4268 cases.

4269 If the table of use cases is specified in a separate subclause within the "Synopsis" clause (see 10.4.5.3),
 4270 that subclause shall be named "Use cases".

4271 The table of use cases shall be labeled: "Use cases". In Table 11 requirements for columns in the table of
 4272 use cases are defined. Each required column is described by an entry in the list provided in Table 11.
 4273 Each list entry starts with the required name of the table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the
 4274 requirements for cells under that column.

4275 **Table 11 – Requirements for columns of the table of use cases**

<p>Use case – Cell values shall state the name of the use case; see 10.4.9.3.1.</p> <p>Description – Cell values shall refer to the subclause within the "Use cases" clause that describes the use case; see 10.4.9.3.</p>
--

4276 An example of a table of use cases is provided in A.2.

4277 **10.4.6 Requirements for the specification of the "Description" clause**

4278 This subclause defines requirements for the "Description" clause in profile specifications.

4279 Each profile specification shall have a "Description" clause.

4280 The "Description" clause in profile specifications

- 4281 • shall provide an overview of the subject profile.
- 4282 • should describe the management domain addressed by the subject profile, and the major object
 4283 types for which the subject profile defines adaptations.
- 4284 • should contain some or all of the following diagrams that detail the purpose of the subject
 4285 profile:
 - 4286 – The "Description" clause of profile specifications written in conformance with the
 4287 condensed structure (see 10.3.2) should contain one or more DMTF collaboration structure

- 4288 diagrams (see 8.3.4) that detail the collaboration defined by the subject profile, or should
 4289 contain one or more DMTF adaptation diagrams (see 8.3.5).
- 4290 Each adaptation defined by the subject profile should appear at least once in these
 4291 diagrams.
- 4292 – The "Description" clause of profile specifications written in conformance with the traditional
 4293 structure (see 10.3.3) should contain one or more DMTF profile class diagrams (see
 4294 10.3.3.2) that detail the model defined by the subject profile.
 - 4295 – The "Description" clause may contain DMTF object diagrams (see 8.3.7) providing details
 4296 on CIM instances, their interactions, and their relationship to managed objects in managed
 4297 environments, as required by the subject profile.

4298 Table 12 lists the requirements for diagrams as part of the Description clause within profile specifications.
 4299 Note that the requirements depend on the structure chosen for the profile specification; see 10.3.

4300 **Table 12 – Profile diagram types**

Diagram type	Usage requirements		Description
	Traditional structure	Condensed structure	
DMTF collaboration structure (EXPERIMENTAL)	Optional	Optional.	See 8.3.4.
DMTF class adaptation (EXPERIMENTAL)	Optional	Required, unless a DMTF collaboration structure diagram is shown.	See 8.3.5.
DMTF class	Not defined	Optional	See 8.3.6.
DMTF profile class (DEPRECATED)	Required, unless the profile revision was changed to specifying adaptations in place of "profile classes". In this case a DMTF collaboration structure or a DMTF class adaptation diagram is required.	Not applicable	See 10.3.3.2.
DMTF object	Optional	Optional	See 8.3.7.
DMTF sequence	Optional	Optional	See 8.3.8.

4301 An example of a "Description" clause is provided in A.3.

4302 **10.4.7 Requirements for the specification of the "Implementation" clause**

4303 This subclause defines requirements for the "Implementation" clause in profile specifications.

4304 **10.4.7.1 General**

4305 Each profile specification shall have an "Implementation" clause.

4306 If the profile is a derived profile that does not add specifications for implementations beyond those defined
 4307 in its (direct and indirect) base profile(s), the "Implementation" clause shall only contain the statement "All
 4308 implementation requirements are defined in base profile(s)."

4309 **10.4.7.2 Usage of subclauses**

4310 The "Implementation" clause should be structured into subclauses.

4311 Subclauses may introduce subtopics that apply to one or more profile elements (for example a subclause
 4312 titled "Element discovery"), or they may introduce subtopics that address specific profile elements (for
 4313 example, a specific adaptation defined in a subclause titled "Adaptation: Fan: CIM_Fan").

4314 Subclauses of the "Implementation" clause should be ordered as follows:

- 4315 • Subclauses that describe the management domain and managed object types
- 4316 • Subclauses that introduce concepts
- 4317 • An optional "Features" subclause, as detailed in 10.4.7.3
- 4318 • A required "Adaptations" subclause, as detailed in 10.4.7.4

4319 NOTE [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#) requires that at each subclause level at least two subclauses are specified. For
 4320 that reason, in the case where according to this guide only the "Adaptations" subclause would be required,
 4321 [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#) would require another subclause of the "Implementation" clause. In this case,
 4322 an initial subclause named "General" containing general definitions is recommended.

4323 10.4.7.3 Requirements for the specification of features

4324 If the subject profile defines features (see 7.15), the "Implementation" clause shall contain a separate
 4325 subclause named "Features".

4326 The "Features" subclause of the "Implementation" clause shall contain a separate subclause for each
 4327 defined feature.

4328 The title of each feature-specific subclause shall be formatted as follows:

4329 `FeatureSubclauseTitle = "Feature: " FeatureName`

4330 The value of `FeatureName` shall be the name of the feature; see 7.15.3.

4331 If the feature is conditional, that shall be stated first in the feature definition subclause, along with the
 4332 specification of the condition, following the conventions established in 10.2.3.

4333 Each feature definition subclause shall provide all of the following (in the order stated):

- 4334 • A description of the feature
- 4335 • The granularity of the feature; see 7.15.5
- 4336 • The requirement level of the feature; see 7.15.4
- 4337 • A description of one or more discovery mechanisms for the feature; see 7.15.6.

4338 The implementation requirements that result from a decision to implement a feature are not defined as
 4339 part of the feature definition subclause; see 7.15.7.

4340 10.4.7.4 Requirements for the specification of adaptations

4341 This subclause defines requirements for the specification of adaptations, addressing the requirements of
 4342 7.13.

4343 10.4.7.4.1 General

4344 The "Implementation" clause shall contain a separate subclause named "Adaptations".

4345 The "Adaptations" subclause of the "Implementation" clause shall contain a separate subclause for each
 4346 adaptation (including adaptations of association classes or indication classes) defined by the profile as
 4347 specified in 10.4.7.4.3, unless the adaptation is a trivial class adaptation.

4348 A trivial class adaptation does not define additional requirements beyond those defined by the adapted
 4349 class and its base adaptations. Trivial class adaptations typically are defined as a point of reference for
 4350 other profiles, such that referencing profiles can define adaptations based on them. The description of a
 4351 trivial class adaptation may be solely provided in the entry in the table of adaptations within the
 4352 "Synopsis" clause if the space requirements for table cells are met; see 10.4.5.9.

4353 The sequence in which adaptation-specific subclauses appear in the "Adaptations" subclause is not
 4354 defined in this guide. Profiles may use any reasonable approach for that, for example an alphabetical
 4355 sequence or an order implied by dependencies of the adaptations. Also, the sequence as listed in the
 4356 table of adaptations (see 10.4.5.9) may differ from the sequence of referenced adaptation-specific
 4357 subclauses.

4358 **10.4.7.4.2 Requirements for the specification of conventions**

4359 The "Adaptations" subclause of the "Implementation" clause shall contain a subclause named
 4360 "Conventions" that specifies the conventions applied within the profile specification for the definition of
 4361 adaptations. The "Conventions" subclause shall precede any subclause defining adaptations.

4362 This guide requires profiles to repeat certain schema requirements (see 7.13.2.8.3). Within a profile
 4363 specification, in these cases the convention shall be to state the name of the qualifier if its effective value
 4364 is True, and to not state the name of the qualifier if its effective value is False. This convention shall be
 4365 applied for the Key and the Required qualifiers as part of property requirements as required by 7.13.2.8.3
 4366 and as detailed in 10.4.7.4.3, and for the In, Out, and Required qualifiers as part of method parameter
 4367 requirements as detailed in 10.4.7.4.6. If applied anywhere in a profile specification, this convention shall
 4368 explicitly be stated as part of the "Conventions" subclause, along with a brief description of what the
 4369 respective qualifier value means.

4370 This guide requires profiles to select [DSP0223](#) as the operations specification that defines the operations
 4371 for that the profile defines operation requirements; see 7.13.3.3.1. Profiles are required to specify
 4372 operation requirements individually per adaptation (see 10.4.7.4.7). This requirement shall be stated in
 4373 the form of a respective convention within the "Conventions" subclause.

4374 An example of an adaptation related "Conventions" subclause is provided in A.4.3.

4375 **10.4.7.4.3 Requirements for the specification of individual adaptations**

4376 Each adaptation definition subclause within the "Adaptation" subclause of the "Implementation" clause
 4377 shall be titled

```
4378     AdaptationClauseTitle = [ "Adaptation" [ *WSP ] ":" *WSP ] AdaptationName
4379     [ *WSP ] ":" *WSP AdaptedClassName
```

4380 *AdaptationName* is the name of the adaptation (see 7.13.2), and *AdaptedClassName* is the name of
 4381 the adapted class.

4382 Each adaptation-specific subclause shall define implementation requirements. Implementation
 4383 requirements may be defined directly within the adaptation-specific subclause, or within separate
 4384 subclauses.

4385 Each adaptation-specific subclause shall state the implementation type of the adaptation (see 7.13.2.5).

4386 Requirements for elements of adaptations, such as base adaptations, alert messages, metrics,
 4387 properties, methods, and operations, shall be stated in the form of an "Element requirements" table. In
 4388 that table each entry shall be assigned a requirement level. If needed, the table entries may refer to other
 4389 subclauses that provide detail information.

4390 NOTE Implementation requirements may also be imposed from other sources, such as the schema or the
 4391 operations specification. Clause 9 details a merge algorithm that produces a set of implementation
 4392 adaptations, merging the implementation requirements from those various sources.

- 4393 The "Element requirements" table listing required elements of the adaptation shall be labeled:
- 4394 ElementRequirementsTableTitle = AdaptationName [*WSP] ":" *WSP "Element
4395 requirements"
- 4396 AdaptationName is the name of the adaptation (see 7.13.2).
- 4397 Table 13 defines requirements for columns in adaptation element tables. Each required column is
4398 described by an entry in the list provided in Table 13. Each list entry starts with the required name of the
4399 table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the requirements for cells under that column.

4400

Table 13 – Requirements for columns of "Element requirements" tables

Element – Cell values shall state the name of the base element, property, method, or operation, or the identification of a metric for which the subject profile defines requirements as part of the defined adaptation.

The following rules apply:

- If base adaptations are defined, these shall be stated, using the following format:

```
AdaptationReference = [ ProfileRefName "::<" ] AdaptationName
```

If a base adaptation is defined in a referenced profile, then `ProfileRefName` shall be the profile reference name (see 7.9.1). `AdaptationName` shall be the name of the base adaptation.

- If an alert indication adaptation refers to one or more alert messages defined in a message registry (see 7.13.4), the identifier of the alert message shall be stated, using the following format:

```
MessageIdentification = MessageRegistryRefName "::<" MessageID
```

`MessageRegistryRefName` shall be the message registry reference name (see 7.12) of the registry in which the message on which the indication is based is defined, and `MessageID` shall be the message id of that message. The message id is the concatenation of the value of the PREFIX attribute and the SEQUENCE_NUMBER attribute from the MESSAGE_ID element that describes the message in the message registry.

- Array property names shall be suffixed with "[]".
- Method names and operation names shall be suffixed with "()".
- Names of association traversal operations (see 10.4.7.4.8) shall be specified as follows:

```
OpName "( )" [ " WS "for" WS AssocAdaptationSet ]
```

where `OpName` is the operation name, as defined by the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1).

If the "for" suffix is not specified, the operation requirement affects all association adaptations specified by the subject profile that reference the adaptation defined in the subclause containing the table.

If the "for" suffix is specified, the operation requirement affects a subset of the association adaptations specified by the subject profile that reference the adaptation defined in the subclause containing the table. In this case, `AssocAdaptationSet` shall list that subset, as follows:

```
AssocAdaptationSet = AssocAdaptation [ *WSP ", " *WSP AssocAdaptationSet ]
```

`AssocAdaptation` shall identify an association adaptation specified by the subject profile that references the adaptation defined in the subclause containing the table.

- Identifications of metric-defining metric requirements shall be stated using the following format:

```
MetricReference = MetricRegistryRefName [ *WSP ] "::<" *WSP METRICID
```

`MetricRegistryRefName` is the name of the metric registry reference that references the metric registry within that the metric for the metric requirement is defined, and `METRICID` identifies the metric within the metric registry, as defined in [DSP8020](#).

Requirement – Cell values shall state the requirement level of the element requirement.

- The requirement level shall be stated in conformance to the conventions defined in 10.2.1.
- For property requirements, the presentation requirement level (see 7.3.1) shall be stated.
- If the profile allows the value Null for the property (see 7.13.2.10.4), the requirement level may be

amended, as follows:

```
Requirement = RequirementLevel *WSP ", " *WSP "NullOK"
```

`RequirementLevel` is the requirement level stated in conformance to the conventions defined in 10.2.1.

- If a property requirement also contains property initialization value requirements (see 7.13.2.11.2) and/or property modification value requirements (see 7.13.2.11.3), these shall be placed into a separate subclause that is referenced in by the value in the "Description" cell (as detailed under "Description").

Description – Cell values shall conform to the following specifications:

The following rules apply:

- Repetition of the effective qualifier values from the schema definition of the adapted class:
 - The convention requirements defined in 10.4.7.4.2 apply.
 - If the effective value of the Key qualifier is True for a property, the word "Key" shall be listed first in the description of the property requirements; if the effective value is False, the name of the qualifier shall not be listed.
 - If the effective value of the Required qualifier is True for a property, the word "Required" shall be listed first in the description of the property requirements; if the effective value is False, the name of the qualifier shall not be listed. Note that the meaning of the Required qualifier is that the value of the qualified element shall not be Null.
 - If both qualifiers have the effective value True, their names shall be presented in the form of a comma separated list.
- If the requirement level is "conditional" or "conditional exclusive", and unless the condition is already stated in the "Requirement" column, the condition shall be stated here, as detailed in 10.2.3.
- The managed object type that is modeled by the adaptation.
- The definition of additional requirements shall be stated, as follows:
 - Property requirements shall be specified as detailed in 10.4.7.4.4.
 - Method requirements shall be specified as detailed in 10.4.7.4.6.
 - Operation requirements shall be specified as detailed in 10.4.7.4.7 and 10.4.7.4.8.
- The keyword "Deprecated" shall be stated if the required element is marked deprecated by the profile, in the schema definition or in the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1); for details, see 7.19.

If present, and if defined in the subject profile, the cell for the description of a base adaptation shall contain a reference to the subclause defining the base adaptation, as follows:

```
"See " SubclauseNumber ". "
```

where `SubclauseNumber` is the number of the subclause containing the definition of the base adaptation.

If defined in a referenced profile, the cell for the description of a base adaptation shall contain a reference to the referenced profile defining the base adaptation, as follows:

```
"See " ProfileReference ". "
```

where `ProfileReference` is the internal document reference to the profile that defines the base adaptation.

- If present, the cell for descriptions of an alert message should contain a reference to the message registry defining the alert message, as follows:

"See " `MessageRegistryReference` "."

where `MessageRegistryReference` is the internal document reference to the message registry that defines the alert message.

- Unless fitting into a reasonable space within the table cell (about 20 words), the element description should be placed in a separate subclause of the adaptation-specific subclause, and referenced from the table cell.

NOTE Version 1.0 of this guide defined "Notes" as the title of the third column; this was changed to "Description" for coherent definition of tables specified in this guide. Many profiles based on version 1.0 of this guide use "Description" already.

4401 Depending on the presence of respective requirements, adaptation element tables shall be subdivided
 4402 into table sections. Each table section shall be preceded by a row that spans all columns and contains the
 4403 section name. The following conventions should be applied:

- 4404 • If base adaptations are defined, these should be listed in a table section named `Base`
 4405 `adaptations`
- 4406 • If alert messages are referenced as part of an alert indication adaptation, the alert message
 4407 references should be listed in a table section named `Alert messages`
- 4408 • If metric definitions are referenced as part of a adaptation defining metric requirements, the
 4409 metric definition references should be listed in a table section named `Metrics`
- 4410 • If property requirements are defined, these should be listed in a table section named
 4411 `Properties`
- 4412 • If method requirements are defined, these should be listed in a table section named `Methods`
- 4413 • If operation requirements are defined, these should be listed in a table section named
 4414 `Operations`

4415 Requirements for optional properties, methods, or operations shall not be listed unless the profile defines
 4416 additional requirements for these elements beyond those defined in the schema or in the operations
 4417 specification (see 7.13.3.3.1).

4418 **10.4.7.4.4 Requirements for the specification of property requirements**

4419 This subclause details the specification of property requirements in profile specifications, addressing the
 4420 requirements of 7.13.2.8.

4421 Property requirements not fitting into the "Element requirements" table shall be placed in a separate
 4422 subclause of the adaptation specific subclause defining the respective adaptation. In this case, the title of
 4423 the property-specific subclause shall be formatted as follows:

4424 `PropertySubclauseTitle = "Property" *WSP ":" WS [AdaptationName *WSP ":"`
 4425 `*WSP] PropertyName ["[]"]`

4426 The square brackets after `PropertyName` are required for array properties.

4427 As required in 7.13.2.8, property requirements should specify a relationship to the aspect of managed
 4428 objects represented by adaptation instances that is reflected by the property.

4429 Property requirements may specify value constraints (see 7.13.2.8.4); in this case, the conventions
 4430 defined in 10.2.4 shall be applied.

4431 Property requirements may specify a default value, as detailed in 10.2.4.1.

4432 Property requirements of adaptations with the "instantiated" implementation type may contain input value
 4433 requirement (see 7.13.2.11); if present, input value requirements shall be specified as defined in
 4434 10.4.7.4.5.

4435 Property requirements on CIM references shall state the multiplicity, as detailed in 10.2.4.2.

4436 **10.4.7.4.5 Requirements for the specification of input value requirements**

4437 Input value requirements may be specified as part of property requirements (see 10.4.7.4.4), or as part of
 4438 parameter requirements in method requirements (see 10.4.7.4.6).

4439 Requirements for input values defined by the subject profile shall be provided in an input value
 4440 requirements table.

4441 An input value requirements table shall be labeled:

4442 `InputValueTableTitle = ElementName "()" *WSP ":" WS ValueType "value`
 4443 `requirements"`

4444 `ElementName = PropertyName / ParameterName`

4445 `ValueType = "Initialization" / "Modification" / "Input"`

4446 `ElementName` is the name of the property or parameter for which input value requirements are specified.
 4447 For properties, only the value types "Initialization" and "Modification" apply; for parameters
 4448 only the value type "Input" applies.

4449 In Table 15, requirements for columns in input value requirements tables are defined. Each required
 4450 column is described by an entry in the list provided in Table 15. Each list entry starts with the required
 4451 name of the table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the requirements for cells under that
 4452 column.

4453 **Table 14 – Requirements for columns in "Input value requirements" tables**

<p>Input value – Cell values shall state the required input value.</p> <p>Requirement – Cell values shall state the requirement level of the input value requirement. The requirement level shall be stated in conformance to the conventions defined in 10.2.1.</p> <p>Description – Cell values shall provide details about the use of the input value as required by the subject profile.</p> <p>The following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – If the schema descriptions of a specific input value adequately describe its use as required by the subject profile, then the method-specific subclause shall refer to the method parameter description in the schema with the statement "See schema description". – Unless fitting into a reasonable space within the table cell (about 20 words), the input value requirement description should be placed in a subclause of the method-specific subclause and referenced from the table cell.

4454 **10.4.7.4.6 Requirements for the specification of method requirements**

4455 This subclause details the specification of method requirements in profile specifications, addressing the
 4456 requirements of 7.13.3.2, namely the specification of constraints on methods and their parameters

4457 according to the requirements of 7.13.3.2.2, the specification of the method semantics as required in
 4458 7.13.3.2.3 and the specification of the reporting of method errors as required in 7.13.3.2.4.

4459 Method requirements not fitting into the "Element requirements" table defined in 10.4.7.4.3 shall be
 4460 placed in a separate subclause of the adaptation specific subclause defining the respective adaptation;
 4461 this applies to all method requirements that define parameter requirements.

4462 If specified, the title of the method-specific subclause shall be formatted as follows:

```
4463     MethodSubclauseTitle = "Method" *WSP ":" WS [ AdaptationName *WSP ":" *WSP
4464     ] MethodName "( )"
```

4465 If stated, *AdaptationName* shall be the name of the adaptation. *MethodName* shall be the name of the
 4466 method as defined by the profile.

4467 If the method requirement is defined with a requirement level other than "mandatory", the requirement
 4468 level shall be repeated, applying the conventions defined in 10.2.1.

4469 The method description shall detail the semantics of the method in prose text, addressing the
 4470 requirements of 7.13.3.2.3. The method description may contain informal references to use cases (see
 4471 10.4.9).

4472 Requirements for method parameters defined by the subject profile shall be provided in a method
 4473 parameter requirements table.

4474 A method parameter requirements table shall be labeled:

```
4475     MethodParameterTableTitle = [ AdaptationName *WSP ":" WS ] MethodName
4476     "( )" *WSP ":" WS Parameter requirements"
```

4477 In Table 15, requirements for columns in method parameter requirements tables are defined. Each
 4478 required column is described by an entry in the list provided in Table 15. Each list entry starts with the
 4479 required name of the table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the requirements for cells under
 4480 that column.

4481 **Table 15 – Requirements for columns in "Method parameter requirements" tables**

<p>Name – Cell values shall state the parameter name.</p> <p>Description – Cell values shall provide details about the use of the parameter as required by the subject profile.</p> <p>The following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – If the effective value of one or more of the following qualifiers: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – In, Out, Required defined by the schema definition of the adapted class is True for a method parameter, the name of that qualifier shall be listed first in the description of the method parameter in the method parameter table; if the effective value is False, the name of the qualifier shall not be listed. If more than one of these qualifiers have the effective value True, their names shall be presented in the form of a comma separated list. The convention requirements defined in 10.4.7.4.2 apply. – If the schema descriptions of a parameter adequately describe its use as required by the subject profile, then the method-specific subclause shall refer to the method parameter description in the schema with the statement "See schema description". – Value constraints may be specified; in this case, the conventions defined in 10.2.4 shall be applied.

- A default value may be specified, as detailed in 7.13.2.9
- Unless fitting into a reasonable space within the table cell (about 20 words), the description should be placed in a subclause of the method-specific subclause that is referenced from the table cell.
- If input parameter value requirements (see 7.13.2.11.4) are specified for a parameter, then the parameter description shall be placed in a subclause of the method-specific subclause that is referenced from the "Description" table cell. In this case the parameter specific subclause shall also contain the input parameter value requirements, in the format required in 10.4.7.4.5.

NOTE Version 1.0 of this guide defined a Qualifiers column and a Type column; these were dropped with version 1.1 of this guide. Instead, the requirement for repeating the effective value of schema defined qualifiers was replaced by the first rule defined for the Description column above; repeating the schema defined type of a parameter is no longer required. The former "Description/Values" column is now titled "Description" for coherent definition of tables specified in this guide.

4482 The method parameter requirements table shall contain a special parameter named "ReturnValue" that
4483 describes the use of return values as required by the subject profile.

4484 If the schema definition of method return values does not adequately describe their use as required by
4485 the subject profile, that description shall be provided in the corresponding cell in the method parameter
4486 requirements table or a subclause referenced from there.

4487 If the schema definition of method return values adequately describe their use as required by the subject
4488 profile, the description should refer to the schema. For example, an Example Fan profile describing return
4489 values for the RequestStateChange() method applied to instances of the CIM_Fan class representing
4490 fans might state "For return values, see the schema definition of the CIM_EnabledLogicalElement class."

4491 The reporting of method errors as required in 7.13.3.2.4 shall be specified as follows:

- 4492 • If the subject profile defines requirements for standard messages for a method, these shall be
4493 stated as defined in 10.4.7.4.9.
- 4494 • If the subject profile defines additional constraints on CIM status codes for a method, these shall
4495 be stated as defined in 10.4.7.4.9.

4496 10.4.7.4.7 Requirements for the specification of operation requirements

4497 Operation requirements not fitting into the "Element requirements" table shall be placed in a separate
4498 subclause of the adaptation specific subclause defining the respective adaptation. In this case, the title of
4499 the operation-specific subclause shall be formatted as follows:

```
4500     OperationSubclauseTitle = "Operation" *WSP ":" WS [ AdaptationName *WSP
4501     ":" *WSP ] OperationName "( )"
```

4502 If stated, `AdaptationName` shall be the name of the adaptation. `OperationName` shall identify the
4503 operation (that is defined in the operations specification - see 7.13.3.3.1) for that operation requirements
4504 are defined; see 10.4.7.4.2. The operation requirements shall be based on the definition of operations in
4505 the operations specification.

4506 If the operation requirement is defined with a requirement level other than "mandatory", the requirement
4507 level shall be repeated, applying the conventions defined in 10.2.1.

4508 Operation requirements may extend the behavior defined in the referenced operations specification (for
4509 example, by requiring specific effects on the managed environment); the description of such extensions
4510 should include all side effects and expected results in the managed environment.

4511 The reporting of operation errors as required in 7.13.3.3.6 shall be specified as follows:

- 4512 • If the subject profile defines requirements for standard messages for an operation, these shall
4513 be stated as defined in 10.4.7.4.9.

- If the subject profile defines additional constraints on CIM status code values for an operation, these shall be stated as defined in 10.4.7.4.9.

10.4.7.4.8 Requirements for the specification of operations related to association traversal

Operations that result in associated or association instances (or instance paths) relative to a source instance are called association traversal operations. Profiles shall define the requirements for association traversal operations as part of the operation requirements of adaptations that are referenced by association adaptations, not as part of the operation requirements of the association adaptations themselves.

In addition, a particular adaptation defined by the subject profile can be the source point for the traversal of more than one association adaptation. If in this case the requirements are different for each association adaptation that can be traversed, then separate operation requirements are required for each traversable association within the definition of that source adaptation.

For example, if a profile defines operations as defined in [DSP0223](#) in order to traverse its SystemDevice adaptation of the CIM_SystemDevice association, the requirements for association traversal operations such as the GetAssociatedInstances() and GetAssociatedInstancePaths() operations would not be specified as part of the operation requirements of the SystemDevice adaptation; instead, the operation requirements for association traversal operations would be specified as part of the operation requirements of adaptations referenced by the SystemDevice association adaptation, in this case for example a System adaptation of the CIM_System class and a LogicalDevice adaptation the CIM_LogicalDevice class.

NOTE Associations may be adapted such that adaptations of subclasses of the classes referenced by the adapted association are referenced; see 7.13.2.8.

EXPERIMENTAL

10.4.7.4.9 Requirements for the specification of error reporting requirements

If the subject profile does not define error reporting requirements for a method (see 7.13.3.2.4) or operation (see 7.13.3.3.6), no error reporting requirements shall be defined in the method-specific or operation-specific subclause; instead, the subclause should contain a statement such as "No error reporting requirements are defined." Alternatively, if the operations specification (see 7.13.3.3.1 and 10.4.7.4.2) defines error reporting requirements, a statement such as

```
"For error reporting requirements, see" OpSpec "."
```

should be used, with OpSpec referring to the operations specification.

NOTE These statements are not required for method or operation requirements solely described through a table entry in the "Element requirements" table (see 10.4.7.4.3), because in this case there is no method-specific or operation-specific subclause.

If a profile defines error reporting requirements (see 7.13.3.2.4 and 7.13.3.3.6), these shall be defined in an error reporting requirements table.

The error reporting requirements table shall be labeled as follows:

```
ErrorReportingRequirementsTableTitle = ActivityName "( )" *WSP ":" WS
Error reporting requirements"
```

```
ActivityName = MethodName / OperationName
```

MethodName is name of the method defined in the profile for which error reporting requirements are defined. OperationName is name of the operation (defined in the operations specification - see 7.13.3.3.1) for which the profile defines profile-specific error reporting requirements.

4557 In Table 16 requirements for columns of the error reporting requirements table are defined. Each column
 4558 is described by an entry in the list provided in Table 16. Each list entry starts with the required name of
 4559 the table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the requirements for each cell within that column.

4560 **Table 16 – Requirements for columns of the "Error reporting requirements" table**

<p>Reporting mechanism – Each cell values shall identify an error reporting mechanisms.</p> <p>The following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Error reporting mechanisms shall be listed using the following format: <pre> ErrorReportingMechanism = MessageIdentificationList / CimStatusCode MessageIdentificationList = MessageIdentification [WS "," WS MessageIdentificationList] MessageIdentification = MessageRegistryRefName "::" MessageID </pre> – MessageRegistryRefName shall be the message registry reference name (see 10.4.5.7) of the registry in which the standard error message is defined, and MessageID shall be the message id of that error message. The message id is the concatenation of the value of the PREFIX attribute and the SEQUENCE_NUMBER attribute from the MESSAGE_ID element that describes the message in the message registry. <p>CimStatusCode shall be a CIM status code.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – The order of error reporting mechanisms listed in the table does not establish an order for their selection in case of respective error situations. However, a profile may establish that interpretation for individual or for all error reporting requirements specified in the profile. Note that some operations specifications imply an order for in their error reporting requirements. <p>Requirement – Cell values shall state the requirement level of the input value requirement.</p> <p>The requirement level shall be stated in conformance to the conventions defined in 10.2.1.</p> <p>Description – Cell values shall state the message text (abbreviated, if appropriate).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Unless fitting into a reasonable space within the table cell (about 20 words), the message description should be placed in a separate subclause and referenced from the table

4561 An example of an error reporting requirements table is provided in A.4.4.

4562 **EXPERIMENTAL**

4563

4564 **DEPRECATED**

4565 Minor revisions of profiles written in conformance with version 1.0 of this guide may continue using a
 4566 format as defined by Table 17 instead of the format defined in Table 16. However, return values and
 4567 messages are alternatives. Profiles should not define the use of return values for situations that result in a
 4568 CIM error, because in this case the method or operation does not return and no return value is returned.
 4569 Either an operation or method is successful at the operations level and returns a return value, or it is not
 4570 successful at the operations level, resulting in a CIM error containing zero or more messages.

4571 **Table 17 – Requirements for columns of the standard message table**

<p>(return) Message ID – Cell values shall state a return value in parenthesis followed by the name of the registering organization and the message ID from that organization.</p>

Message – Cell values shall state the message text (abbreviated, if appropriate).

4572 Each table cell should contain not more than a reasonable amount of words (about 20 words). If more text
 4573 is required, respective content shall be placed in a separate subclause and referenced from the table.

4574 **DEPRECATED**

4575 **10.4.7.4.10 Requirements for the specification of metric requirements**

4576 Metric requirements not fitting into the table defined in 10.4.7.4.3 shall be placed in a separate subclause
 4577 of the subclause defining the respective adaptation.

4578 If specified, the title of the metric-specific subclause shall be formatted as follows:

4579 `MetricSubclauseTitle = "Metric: " MetricName`

4580 `MetricName` shall be the name of the metric as defined in the referenced metric registry.

4581 If the metric requirement is defined with a requirement level other than "mandatory", the requirement level
 4582 shall be repeated, applying the conventions defined in 10.2.1.

4583 Metric requirements should detail the semantics of the metric as required in 7.13.3.5.

4584 **10.4.7.4.11 Requirements for the specification of instance requirements**

4585 Each adaptation definition subclause that defines an adaptation of an ordinary class or of an association
 4586 class shall state instance requirements, as defined in 7.13.3.4. Instance requirements may be specified
 4587 as part of the implementation requirements, or may be specified in a separate subclause.

4588 **10.4.7.4.12 Requirements for the specification of indication-generation requirements**

4589 Each adaptation definition subclause that defines an adaptation of an indication class shall state
 4590 indication-generation requirements, as defined in 7.13.4.1. Indication-generation requirements may be
 4591 specified as part of the implementation requirements, or may be specified in a separate subclause.

4592 **DEPRECATED**

4593 Profile specifications that apply the condensed profile specification structure (see 10.3.2) shall not contain
 4594 a "Methods" clause because in this case respective content is already specified as part of adaptation
 4595 definitions within the "Implementation" clause; see 10.4.7.4.6 and 10.4.7.4.7.

4596 **10.4.8 Requirements for the specification of the "Methods" clause**

4597 This subclause details requirements for the "Methods" clause in profile specifications.

4598 **10.4.8.1 General**

4599 Profile specifications that apply the traditional profile specification structure (see 10.3.3) shall contain a
 4600 "Methods" clause.

4601 **10.4.8.2 Requirements for the specification of methods**

4602 This subclause specifies the definition of method requirements in profile specifications that apply the
 4603 traditional profile specification structure.

4604 **10.4.8.2.1 General**

4605 The "Methods" clause shall contain an "Extrinsic methods" subclause.

4606 If the profile specification specifies a specialized profile that does not add requirements for methods, but
 4607 one or more of its base profile(s) defines requirements for methods, the "Extrinsic methods" subclause
 4608 shall contain only the statement "All method requirements are defined in base profile(s)."

4609 If the profile specification specifies a profile that does not add adaptations for extrinsic methods, the
 4610 "Extrinsic methods" subclause shall contain only the statement "No method requirements are defined."

4611 **10.4.8.2.2 Method-specific subclauses**

4612 Each extrinsic method that is referenced by a class adaptation defined in a subject profile shall be
 4613 specified in a separate subclause of the "Extrinsic methods" subclause.

4614 The title of method-specific subclauses shall be formatted as follows:

4615 `MethodSubclauseTitle = ClassAdaptationName "." MethodName "()"`

4616 `ClassAdaptationName` shall be the name of the class adaptation. `MethodName` shall be the name of
 4617 the method.

4618 Method-specific subclauses shall be referenced from the subclause of the "CIM elements" clause that
 4619 defines the class adaptation referencing the method; see 10.4.10.3.

4620 The method-specific subclause should provide a description detailing the semantics of the method as
 4621 required in 7.13.3.2. The description may contain references to use cases (see 10.4.9).

4622 The description of the method parameters required by the subject profile shall be provided in a table.

4623 The table shall be labeled:

4624 `ParameterTableTitle = MethodName "() : Parameters"`

4625 In Table 18 requirements for columns in method parameter tables are defined. Each required column is
 4626 described by an entry in the list provided in Table 18. Each list entry starts with the required name of the
 4627 table column in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the requirements for cells under that column.

4628

Table 18 – Requirements for columns in method parameter tables

<p>Qualifiers – Cell values shall state parameter qualifiers as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – The cell value shall list the textual value "In" if and only if the effective value of the In qualifier for the parameter is True. – The cell value shall list the textual value "Out" if and only if the effective value of the Out qualifier for the parameter is True. – The cell value shall list the textual value "Req" if and only if the effective value of the Required qualifier for the parameter is True. – A profile specification shall not change the interpretation of the value of the schema-defined In, Out, and Required qualifiers; it shall just present their effective values. <p>NOTE The textual value "Req" in a cell under the "Qualifiers" column does not indicate whether or not the profile requires an implementation of the parameter; however, a profile may establish value constraints on parameters (see 7.13.3.2).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Multiple textual values shall be separated by commas. <p>Name – Cell values shall state the parameter name.</p> <p>Type – Cell values shall state the parameter type.</p> <p>Description/Values – Cell values shall provide details about the use of the parameter as required by the profile.</p> <p>The following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – If value constraints are defined, the conventions defined in 10.2.4 shall be applied. – The value in a Description/Value table cell should contain not more than a reasonable amount of words (about 20 words). Longer text passages should be placed in a subclause of the method-specific subclause and referenced from the table cell.

4629 If the schema descriptions of method parameters adequately describe the use of the method parameters
 4630 as required by the subject profile, then the method-specific subclause shall refer to the method parameter
 4631 description in the schema with this statement: "See schema description."

4632 If the schema descriptions of method return values does not adequately describe their use as required by
 4633 the subject profile, the method-specific subclause shall provide a table specifying return values.

4634 The table shall be labeled:

4635 `ReturnValueTableTitle = MethodName "()": Return values"`

4636 In Table 19 requirements for columns of the return value table are defined. Each column is described by
 4637 an entry in the list provided in Table 19. Each list entry starts with the required name of the table column
 4638 in **bold face**, followed by a dash and the requirements for each cell within that column.

4639 **Table 19 – Requirements for columns of the return value table**

<p>Value – Cell values shall state the numeric return value followed by the corresponding string description in parentheses. The description shall not be enclosed in quotes.</p> <p>Example: "1 (Not Implemented)".</p> <p>Description – Cell values shall provide details about the situation indicated by the return value.</p> <p>The following rules apply:</p>
--

- If a return value only applies under certain conditions, this shall be stated in the following form:

"Applicable only if the " ConditionalElement " is implemented."
- The value in a Description table cell should contain not more than a reasonable amount of words (about 20 words). Longer text passages should be placed in a subclause of the method-specific subclause and referenced from the table cell.

4640 If the schema descriptions of method return values adequately describe their use as required by the
 4641 subject profile, the method-specific subclause should refer to the schema. For example, an Example Fan
 4642 profile describing return values for the RequestStateChange() method applied to instances of the
 4643 CIM_Fan class representing fans might state, "For return values, see the schema definition of the
 4644 CIM_EnabledLogicalElement class."

4645 If the subject profile specifies the use of standard messages for a method, these shall be stated as
 4646 defined in 10.4.7.4.9. If the subject profile does not specify use of standard messages for a method, no
 4647 table shall be provided in the method-specific subclause; instead, the method-specific subclause shall
 4648 contain the statement: "No standard messages are defined."

4649 **10.4.8.3 Requirements for the specification of the "Operations" subclause**

4650 This subclause details requirements for the "Operations" subclause of the "Methods" clause in profile
 4651 specifications.

4652 **10.4.8.3.1 General**

4653 The "Methods" clause should contain a "Generic operations" subclause.

4654 If the profile specification specifies a specialized profile that does not add requirements for operations, the
 4655 "Generic operations" subclause shall contain only the statement: "All operation requirements are defined
 4656 in base profile(s)."

4657 **10.4.8.3.2 Requirements for the specification of the "Profile conventions for operations"
 4658 subclause**

4659 The "Generic operations" subclause shall contain a "Profile conventions for operations" subclause unless
 4660 the profile is a specialized profile that does not add specifications for operations beyond those defined in
 4661 its base profile(s).

4662 The "Profile conventions for operations" subclause shall specify conventions applied by the profile for the
 4663 specification of requirements for operations; it shall follow the method-specific subclauses (if any).

4664 The "Profile conventions for operations subclause" shall state the operations specification that rules the
 4665 definition of operations in the profile, as required in 7.13.3.3. For example, "This profile defines operations
 4666 in terms of [DSP0223](#)."

4667 Table 20 defines three options, one of which shall be applied by a profile specification for the "Generic
 4668 operations" subclause.

4669 **Table 20 – Profile convention options**

Option	Requirements for the Intrinsic operations subclause
Option 1 – Table includes each operation for each class.	Deprecated with version 1.0.1; replaced by option 2, with additional requirements specified in 10.4.8.3.3. "Support for operations for each profile class (including associations) is specified in the following subclauses. Each of these subclauses includes a table listing all the operations supported by this profile. Compliant implementations of this profile shall support all these

<p>Option 2 – Table includes operations with profile-specific requirements.</p> <p>The operations in the default list apply to the extent detailed in adaptation-specific subclauses of the "Methods" clause.</p>	<p>operations."</p> <p>The "Profile conventions for operations" subclause of the "Methods" clause shall contain the text:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">"For each profile class (including associations), the implementation requirements for operations, including for those in the following default list, are specified in class-specific subclauses of OpScNumber."</p> <p>OpScNumber is the number of the Operations subclause of the Methods clause.</p> <p>A profile may define a default list of operations, as follows:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">"The default list of operations is as follows:</p> <p style="padding-left: 80px;">operation-1</p> <p style="padding-left: 80px;">operation-2</p> <p style="padding-left: 80px;">..."</p> <p>The applicability of the default list shall be specified in adaptation-specific subclauses of the "Operations" subclause of the "Methods" clause; see 10.4.8.3.3.</p>
<p>Option 3 – Table includes operations with profile-specific requirements.</p> <p>Other operations may be implemented.</p>	<p>Deprecated with version 1.0.1; replaced by option 2, with additional requirements specified in 10.4.8.3.3.</p> <p>"Support for operations for each profile class (including associations) is specified in the following subclauses. Each of these subclauses includes either</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • a statement "All operations from the default list specified in section nnn are supported as described by DSPXXXX vX.y.z" where nnn is the number of the section containing the default list. • a table listing all the operations that are not constrained by this profile or where the profile requires behavior other than described by DSPXXX. <p>The default list of operations is operation-1, operation-2, ... Profile requirements for these operations are specified in the "Requirements" column.</p>

4670 The default list of intrinsic operations for ordinary classes typically lists the intrinsic operations related to
 4671 manipulation of instances and possibly intrinsic operations to execute queries.

4672 **10.4.8.3.3 Requirements for the specification of class-specific operations subclauses**

4673 A subclause shall be included for each class adaptation (including association adaptations) defined by the
 4674 subject profile.

4675 Subsequent definitions in this subclause make use of the following ABNF rules:

- 4676 • TableNum is the number of the table.
- 4677 • OpSpec is a reference to the operations specification.
- 4678 • PcoNum is the subclause number of the "Profile conventions for operations" subclause.

4679 If a default list of operations was specified, and the profile does not require modifications on that default
 4680 list, the following statement (including the NOTE) shall be provided:

4681 "All operations in the default list in " PCONum " shall be implemented as
 4682 defined in " OpSpec "."

4683 "NOTE Related profiles may define additional requirements on operations for the
 4684 profile class."

4685 If a default list of operations was specified, and the profile requires modifications on that default list, the
 4686 modification shall be stated in a separate table, and the following statement (including the NOTE) shall be
 4687 provided:

4688 "Table " TabNum " lists implementation requirements for operations. If
 4689 implemented, these operations shall be implemented as defined in " OpSpec
 4690 ". In addition, and unless otherwise stated in Table " TabNum ", all
 4691 operations in the default list in " PCONum " shall be implemented as
 4692 defined in " OpSpec "."

4693 "NOTE Related profiles may define additional requirements on operations for the
 4694 profile class."

4695 NOTE The quotation, the indentation and the use of a monospaced font are elements of the ABNF rule and are
 4696 not part of the normative definition. Instead, the presented text is intended to be part of the normal text of
 4697 the subject profile.

4698 If a table is provided detailing requirements for operations, the table shall have the format as defined in
 4699 10.4.7.4.7.

4700 For operations related to associations the requirements defined in 10.4.7.4.8 apply correspondingly for
 4701 "profile classes".

4702 **DEPRECATED**

4703 **10.4.9 Requirements for the specification of the "Use cases" clause**

4704 This subclause details requirements for the "Use cases" clause in profile specifications.

4705 **10.4.9.1 General**

4706 Each profile specification shall have a "Use cases" clause.

4707 Within the "Use cases" clause, each use case defined by the profile (see 7.16) shall be documented in a
 4708 separate subclause, as detailed in 10.4.9.3.

4709 State descriptions (see 7.16.2) may be documented as part of a use case, or may be documented in a
 4710 separate subclause of a "Use cases" clause that is referenced from within use case specific subclauses.

4711 **10.4.9.2 Requirements for the specification of subclauses containing state descriptions**

4712 A profile specification may contain zero or more subclauses with state descriptions depicting typical
 4713 situations that a client may observe in the process of applying use cases defined by the profile. Each
 4714 state description-specific subclause shall contain one state description.

4715 All or part of a state description may be provided in graphical form as DMTF object diagrams; in this case,
 4716 the rules defined in 8.3.7 apply.

4717 The title of state description subclauses shall be formatted as follows:

```
4718 StateDescriptionSubclauseTitle = [ "StateDescription *WSP ":" *WSP ]
4719 StateDescriptionName [ *WSP ":" *WSP StateDescriptionTitle ]
```

4720 StateDescriptionName shall state the name of the state description. The name shall comply with the
 4721 rules for names of named profile elements (see 7.2.2), and should be chosen such that it enables a
 4722 human reader to grasp the situation detailed by the state description; the name shall be unique within the
 4723 profile specification. StateDescriptionTitle may state a phrase that further details the purpose of
 4724 the state description in situations where StateDescriptionName does not suffice.

4725 A brief description of the object diagram should be provided, with particular attention on the managed
 4726 objects in the managed environment and their relationships that are represented by the CIM instances
 4727 depicted in the object diagram.

4728 **10.4.9.3 Requirements for the specification of use-case-specific subclauses**

4729 **10.4.9.3.1 General**

4730 Each use case shall be specified in a separate subclause of the "Use cases" clause of a profile
 4731 specification.

4732 The title of use case-specific subclauses shall be formatted as follows:

```
4733 UseCaseSubclauseTitle = UseCaseName [ *WSP ":" *WSP UseCaseTitle ]
```

4734 *UseCaseName* shall state a name for the use case. The name shall comply with the rules for names of
 4735 named profile elements (see 7.2.2), and should be chosen such that it enables a human reader to grasp
 4736 the intent of the use case; the name shall be unique within the profile. *UseCaseTitle* may state a
 4737 phrase that captures the purpose of the use case in situations where *UseCaseName* does not suffice.

4738 Each use case-specific subclause should contain a brief description of the use case.

4739 See A.5 for examples of use cases.

4740 **10.4.9.3.2 Requirements for the specification of preconditions in use cases**

4741 The definition of preconditions as required by 7.16.3 shall be provided within a first subclause within any
 4742 the use case-specific subclause. The precondition subclause shall be titled "Preconditions".

4743 Sequences of statements expressing elements of preconditions should be organized in a list format.

4744 **10.4.9.3.3 Requirements for the specification of flows of activities in use cases**

4745 The description of flows of activities as required by 7.16.4 shall be provided in a separate subclause
 4746 within any use case-specific subclause. The subclause shall be titled "Flow of activities".

4747 The following formal requirements apply:

- 4748 • Use case steps should be numbered. Numbering is required if use case steps are referenced.
- 4749 • Descriptions may contain references to DMTF object diagrams.
- 4750 • Normative requirements shall not be duplicated in use case descriptions.
- 4751 • Parameter values should be stated in a list format where each list entry describes one
 4752 parameter and its value. If a parameter value is an embedded CIM instance, a list format should
 4753 be used to state names and values of required or applicable properties. Descriptions of
 4754 parameters or properties should provide an interpretation of their use in the management
 4755 domain.
- 4756 • The inspection of method results and return parameters may be described either as part of a
 4757 use case step after the description of a method invocation, or as separate use case steps.
- 4758 • The flow of activities should be the sequential processing of use case steps; however, the
 4759 following phrases may be used to indicate special situations:

```
4760 - StepPostCondition "; the use case continues with step" StepNumber  

  4761 ". "
```

4762 where `StepPostCondition` details a simple post condition of the use case step such as
 4763 a return value and its significance. If more than one next step is possible, each step should
 4764 be listed together with the respective post condition.

4765 – "This completes the use case; the postconditions in"
 4766 SubclauseNumber "apply."

4767 This phrase describes a normal completion of the use case. Within the description of one
 4768 use case at least one step should end with a normal completion of the use case.

4769 – "This terminates the use case; the postconditions in"
 4770 SubclauseNumber "apply."

4771 This phrase describes an abnormal termination of the use case. Within the description of
 4772 one use case zero or more steps can end with an abnormal termination of the use case.

4773 Alternatively to the format defined above, use cases may be presented as pseudo-code.

4774 10.4.9.3.4 Requirements for the specification of postconditions in use cases

4775 The definition of a postcondition as required by 7.16.5 shall be provided in a separate subclause within
 4776 the use case-specific subclause that is titled "Postconditions".

4777 Postcondition subclauses may be further subdivided into subclauses, addressing various situations
 4778 resulting from processing the use case such as success or failure. Such situations may likewise be
 4779 presented by other structuring elements such as lists; however, separate subclauses are required if the
 4780 content is referenced elsewhere.

4781 DEPRECATED

4782 Profile specifications that apply the condensed profile specification structure (see 10.3.2) shall not contain
 4783 a "CIM elements" clause because in this case the definition of CIM elements is replaced by the definition
 4784 of class adaptations within the "Implementation" clause (see 10.4.7.4), and the list of class adaptations is
 4785 provided as part of the "Synopsis" clause (see 10.4.5).

4786 10.4.10 Requirements for the specification of the "CIM elements" clause

4787 This subclause details requirements for the "CIM elements" clause in profile specifications.

4788 10.4.10.1 General

4789 Each profile specification that applies the traditional profile specification structure (see 10.3.3) shall
 4790 contain a "CIM elements" clause.

4791 Version 1.0 of this guide did not formally define the concept of adaptations; instead it informally used the
 4792 terms "class", "profile class", "profiled class", or "supported class". For details, see 7.13.1.

4793 Revisions of existing profile specifications that apply version 1.1 or a later version of this guide should
 4794 start using the term adaptation in modified text passages; however, it is not required to modify otherwise
 4795 unmodified text solely for the introduction of these new terms. The use of these terms in this guide shall
 4796 apply correspondingly to entities such as "class", "profile class", or "supported class" as used by profiles
 4797 written conformant to version 1.0 of this guide.

4798 If the subject profile is a derived profile that does not add specifications for "CIM elements" beyond those
 4799 defined in its base profile(s), the "CIM elements" clause shall contain the statement: "All CIM elements
 4800 are defined in base profile(s)."

4801 NOTE Typical examples of derived profiles not adding specifications for CIM elements are those derived from an
 4802 abstract profile for the sole purpose of providing a base for an implementation. Recall that abstract profiles
 4803 must not be implemented directly.

4804 The "CIM elements" clause shall contain the following subclauses:

- 4805 • An initial "Overview" subclause; see 10.4.10.2.
- 4806 • A subclause for each adaptation defined by the profile; see 10.4.10.3.

4807 **10.4.10.2 Requirements for the specification of the "Overview" subclause**

4808 This subclause details requirements for the "Overview" subclause of the "CIM elements" clause.

4809 The "Overview" subclause shall contain a table listing the adaptations defined by the profile (including
 4810 association adaptations and indication adaptations). The table shall be labeled:

4811 `CIMElementTableTitle = ProfileName "profile : CIM elements"`

4812 `ProfileName` shall be the registered name of the profile. Each entry in the table shall declare an
 4813 adaptation defined by the subject profile.

4814 The table shall have four columns:

<p>AdaptationName – Cell values shall state the name of the adaptation; see 7.13.</p> <p>Elements – Cells may be split into subcells, as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – The first subcell shall contain the name of the adapted class. – If base adaptations are defined, these shall be stated in subsequent subcells, using the following ABNF defined format: $\text{AdaptationReference} = \text{ProfileName} "::" \text{AdaptationName}$ <p>The value of <code>ProfileName</code> shall be the registered name (see 7.6.2) of the referenced profile that defines the referenced adaptation, and the value of <code>AdaptationName</code> shall be the name of the referenced adaptation, as defined by its defining profile.</p> – If a standard message is defined for an indication adaptation, that message shall be stated in a subsequent subcell. <p>Requirement – Cell values shall state the requirement level for the adaptation, as defined in 10.2.1.</p> <p>The following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – If an adaptation is based on other adaptations and different requirement levels apply, these shall be specified in separate subcells in this column; however, within the scope of a cell in the "Adaptation" column, if all corresponding cells in the "Elements" column are required with the same requirement level, the respective subcells in the "Requirement" column may be collapsed into one cell containing the common requirement level. <p>Description – Cell values shall contain a description of the adaptation.</p> <p>The following rules apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – If the requirement level is "conditional", and unless the condition is already stated in the "Requirement" column, the condition shall be stated here, as detailed in 10.2.3. – A textual description shall be provided that describes the purpose of the adaptation. The description

should describe the managed object type that is modeled by the adaptation, unless that is already addressed with sufficient precision by the schema descriptions of the adapted class.

- For trivial class adaptations defined by the subject profile that do not specify additional requirements beyond those defined in the schema definition of the adapted class, that shall be indicated by the following statement:

"See CIM schema definition."

- If the corresponding cell in the "Elements" column is split into subcells, the cell in the "Description" column shall be split into respective subcells, unless the description applies in all cases, in which case respective subcells in the "Description" column may be collapsed into one cell containing the common description.
- If the value in any "Description" subcell exceeds 20 words, a separate adaptation definition subclause shall be provided within the "Implementation" clause; for details, see 10.4.7.4.3. In this case, the description shall be provided as part of the adaptation definition subclause, and the adaptation definition subclause shall be referenced from the cell, as follows:

"See" AdaptationSubclauseNumber "."

AdaptationSubclauseNumber is the number of the subclause of the "Implementation" clause that contains the definition of the adaptation.

4815 **10.4.10.3 Requirements for the specification of subclauses defining class adaptations**

4816 The specification of the each class adaptation subclause shall be in compliance with 10.4.7.4, with the
4817 following admissible deviations:

- 4818 • The title of the subclause may apply the deprecated naming convention using the name of the
4819 adapted class and a modifier; for details see 7.13.

4820 **DEPRECATED**

Annex A (Informative)

Examples

4821
4822
4823
4824

4825 **A.1 General**

4826 All the examples provided within Annex A provide excerpts from a hypothetical Example Fan profile. The
4827 examples are related to each other, but together they would not form a complete profile specification.

4828 **A.2 Example of a "Synopsis" clause**

4829 Table A.1 provides an example of a "Synopsis" clause; see 10.4.5 for requirements on the specification of
4830 the "Synopsis" clause.

4831

Table A.1 – Example of "Synopsis" clause

<p>X-5 Synopsis</p> <p>X-5.1 Profile attributes</p> <p>Profile name: Example Fan</p> <p>Version: 1.1.0</p> <p>Organization: DMTF</p> <p>Schema version: 2.24</p> <p>Profile type: Component</p> <p>Central class adaptation: Fan</p> <p>Scoping class adaptation: ComputerSystem</p> <p>Scoping algorithm: FanInSystem</p> <p>X-5.2 Summary</p> <p>The Example Fan profile extends the management capability of a scoping profile by adding the capability to describe fans and redundant fans within managed systems.</p> <p>X-5.3 Profile references</p> <p>Table X-1 lists the profile references defined in this profile.</p>

Table X-1 – Profile references					
Profile reference name	Profile name	Organization	Version	Relationship	Description
Indications	Indications	DMTF	1.2	Conditional	The profile defining the creation and delivery of indications. Condition: The Indications feature is implemented; see X-7.2.1 for feature definition.
FanProfileRegistration	Example Profile Registration	DMTF	1.1	Mandatory	The Example Profile Registration profile applied for the registration of implementations of the Example Fan profile.
FanPhysicalAsset	Example Physical Asset	DMTF	1.1	Optional	The Example Physical Asset profile applied for fans as physical assets.
FanSensors	Example Sensors	DMTF	1.1	Conditional	The Example Sensors profile applied for sensors of fans. Condition: The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented; see X-7.2.4 for the feature definition.

X-5.4 Referenced registries

Table X-2 lists the message registry references defined by this profile.

Table X-2 – Message registry references

Registry reference name	Registry name	Organization	Version	Description
WBEMMREG	WBEM Operations Message Registry	DMTF	1.0	See DSP8016.
PLATMREG	Platform Alert Message Registry	DMTF	1.1	See DSP8007.

X-5.5 Features

Table X-3 lists the features defined in this profile.

Table X-3 – Features

Feature name	Granularity	Requirement	Description
Indications	Profile	Optional	See X-7.2.1 for feature definition.
FanStateManagement	Fan instance	Optional	See X-7.2.2 for feature definition.

FanElementNameModification	Fan instance	Optional	(Not detailed in this example)
FanSpeedSensor	Fan instance	Conditional	See X-7.2.4 for feature definition.
FanLifecycleAlerts	Profile	Conditional	See X-7.2.5 for feature definition.

X-5.7 Adaptations

Table X-4 lists the class adaptations defined in this profile.

Table X-4 – Adaptations

Adaptation	Elements	Requirement	Description
Instantiated, embedded and abstract adaptations			
Fan	CIM_Fan	Mandatory	See X-7.4.3.
FanInSystem	CIM_SystemDevice	Mandatory	See X-7.4.4.
FanCapabilities	CIM_EnabledLogicalElementCapabilities	Conditional	See X-7.4.5.
CapabilitiesOfFan	CIM_ElementCapabilities	Conditional	See X-7.4.6.
CooledElement	CIM_ManagedElement	Mandatory	See ...
...
FanSensor	CIM_Sensor	Conditional	See X-7.4.7.
FanNumericSensor	CIM_NumericSensor	Conditional	See X-7.4.8.
SensorOfFan	CIM_AssociatedSensor	Conditional	See X-7.4.9.
...
FanProfileRegistration	CIM_RegisteredProfile	Mandatory	See ...
...
FanSystem	CIM_System	Mandatory	Instantiated ordinary adaptation; scoping class adaptation; scoping profiles base their central class adaptation on this adaptation.
...
Indications and exceptions			
FanAddedAlert	CIM_AlertIndication	Conditional	See X-7.4.34.
FanRemovedAlert	CIM_AlertIndication	Conditional	See X-7.4.35.
FanFailedAlert	CIM_AlertIndication	Optional	See X-7.4.36.
FanReturned-ToOKAlert	CIM_AlertIndication	Optional	See X-7.4.37.
FanDegradedAlert	CIM_AlertIndication	Optional	See X-7.4.38.

X-5.8 Use cases

Table X-6 lists the use cases defined in this profile.

Table X-6 – Use cases

Use-case name	Description
...	...
DetermineFanState	See X-8.3.
...	...
RequestFanStateChange	See X-8.7.
...	...

4832 **A.3 Example of a "Description" clause**

4833 Table A.2 shows an example of the "Description" clause for an Example Fan profile.

4834

Table A.2 – Example of a "Description" clause

<p>X-6 Description</p> <p>X-6.1 General</p> <p>The Example Fan profile addresses the management domain of representing and managing fans in managed systems, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • the representation of the relationship between fans and the elements that are provided cooling by the fan • the representation of sensors measuring the revolution speed of fans • fan state management <p>X-6.1 Fan</p> <p>A fan is a device within a system that provides active cooling to specific elements of a system, and/or to the system as a whole.</p> <p>For the management domain addressed by this profile, a fan is considered to be either active or inactive; any other potentially possible state needs to be mappable.</p> <p>X-6.2 System</p> <p>A system is an entity made up of components that operates as a 'functional whole'. A system can contain elements that require cooling, such as processors, chipsets, disks or power supplies. Each of these elements may require cooling by means of dedicated fans, and/or may depend on cooling provided to the system as a whole.</p> <p>X-6.3 Cooled element</p> <p>Cooled elements are elements contained by a system that require cooling.</p> <p>X-6.4 Temperature sensor</p> <p>A temperate sensor measures either the temperature of the system as a whole, or that of individual cooled elements within a system.</p> <p>X-6.5 Fan speed sensors</p> <p>Fans speed sensors allow monitoring the rotation speed of fans.</p> <p>...</p> <p>X-6.10 CIM model overview</p> <p>Figure <Fig1> represents the DMTF collaboration structure diagram the Example Fan profile.</p> <p>NOTE Here one or more DMTF collaboration diagrams and/or DMTF adaptation diagrams would be placed. For examples, see Figure 8 on page 76.</p> <p>The FanSystem adaptation (see X-6.2) models systems (see X-6.2).</p> <p>The Fan adaptation (see X-7.4.3) models fans (see X-6.1).</p> <p>...</p>

4835 **A.4 Example of an "Implementation" clause**

4836 **A.4.1 Example of the general layout of an "Implementation" clause**

4837 Table A.3 shows an example of the general layout of the "Implementation" clause; see 10.4.7 for
 4838 requirements on the specification of the "Implementation" clause.

4839 **Table A.3 – Overview example of an "Implementation" clause**

<p>X-7 Implementation</p> <p>X-7.1 General</p> <p>...</p> <p>// general implementation requirements</p> <p>...</p> <p>X-7.2 Features</p> <p>// See A.4.2 for example definitions of features.</p> <p>...</p> <p>X-7.4 Adaptations</p> <p>// See A.4.3 for an example of the "General requirements" subclause.</p> <p>// See A.4.4 for examples of subclauses defining adaptations of ordinary classes and associations.</p> <p>...</p>
--

4840 **A.4.2 Example of feature definitions**

4841 Table A.4 shows examples of feature definitions within the "Features" subclause of the "Implementation"
 4842 subclause; see 7.15 for requirements on the specification of features.

4843 **Table A.4 – Example definitions of features**

<p>X-7.2.1 Feature: Indications</p> <p>X-7.2.1.1 General</p> <p>The implementation of the Indications feature is conditional.</p> <p>Condition: Any of the following is true:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The FanLifecycleAlertsFeature is implemented; see X-7.2.5.

- The FanFailedAlert indication adaptation is implemented; see **X-7.4.36**.
- The FanReturnedToOK indication adaptation is implemented; see **X-7.4.37**.
- The FanFailedAlert indication adaptation is implemented; see **X-7.4.38**.

X-7.2.1.2 Feature description

The implementation of the Indications feature provides for indications being generated and delivered to subscribed listeners as the events modeled by these indications occur.

X-7.2.1.3 Feature discovery

The presence of the Indications feature is indicated by the exposure of an `Indications::IndicationsProfileRegistration` instance (see DSP1054) that is related to the `FanProfileRegistration` instance (see ...) with a `ReferencedProfile` association instance (see ...).

X-7.2.2 Feature: FanStateManagement

X-7.2.1.1 General

The implementation of the `FanStateManagement` feature is conditional.

Condition: The managed environment includes fans that are state manageable.

X-7.2.1.2 Feature description

The implementation of the `FanStateManagement` feature enables clients to request state changes on fans, such as activation or deactivation.

X-7.2.1.3 Feature discovery

The presence of the `FanStateManagement` feature for a particular `Fan` instance (see X-7.4.3) is indicated by the exposure of a `FanCapabilities` instance (see X-7.4.5) that is associated to the `Fan` instance through a `FanElementCapabilities` association instance (see X-7.4.6), and the value of the `RequestedStatesSupported[]` array property in the `FanCapabilities` instance is a non-empty list of values, each representing a supported requestable state for the fan.

X-7.2.3 Feature: FanElementNameEdit

[not detailed in this example]

...

X-7.2.4 Feature: FanSpeedSensor

The implementation of the `FanSpeedSensor` feature is conditional.

Condition: The managed environment includes fans with sensors.

X-7.2.3.1 Feature description

Fan speed sensing is the capability of a fan to provide information about its revolution speed. Fan speed sensor information may be reported as discrete values such as "Normal", or as analogous speed such as "1200" rpm.

X-7.2.3.2 Feature discovery

The presence of the FanSpeedSensor feature for a particular Fan instance (see X-7.4.3) is indicated by the exposure of a FanSensor instance (see X-7.4.7) that is associated to the Fan instance through a SensorOfFan instance (see X-7.4.9), and the Sensors profile is supported for the FanSensor instance.

...

X-7.2.5 Feature: FanLifecycleAlerts

The implementation of the FanLifecycleAlerts feature is optional.

The FanLifecycleAlerts feature groups the requirements for reporting fan lifecycle events such as the addition of a fan to the managed environment, or the removal of a fan from the managed environment.

4844 **A.4.3 Example of the "Conventions" subclause**

4845 Table A.5 details an example of the "Conventions" subclause within the "Adaptations" subclause of the
4846 "Implementation" clause; see 10.4.7.4.2 for requirements on the specification of implementation
4847 requirements for operations.

4848 **Table A.5 – Example of the "Conventions" subclause****X-7.4.1 Conventions**

...

This profile repeats the effective values of certain Boolean qualifiers as part of property requirements, or of method parameter requirements. The following convention is established: If the name of a qualifier is listed, its effective value is True; if the qualifier name is not listed, its effective value is False. The convention is applied in the following cases:

- In: indicates that the parameter is an input parameter
- Out: indicates that the parameter is an output parameter
- Key: indicates that the property is a key (that is, its value is part of the instance part)
- Required: indicates that the element value shall be non-Null.

This profile defines operation requirements based on [DSP0223](#).

For adaptations of ordinary classes and of associations the requirements for operations are specified in adaptation-specific subclauses of X-7.4.

For association traversal operation requirements that are specified only in the elements table of an adaptation (i.e. without operation-specific subclauses), the names of the association adaptations to be traversed are listed in the elements table.

...

4849 **A.4.4 Examples of subclauses defining adaptations**

4850 Table A.6 details examples of subclauses within the "Adaptation" subclause of the "Implementation"
4851 clause that define adaptations of ordinary classes and associations; see 10.4.7.4 for requirements on the
4852 specification of class adaptations.

Table A.6 – Examples of subclauses defining adaptations

<p>X-7.4.3 Fan: CIM_Fan</p> <p>X-7.4.3.1 General</p> <p>The Fan adaptation models fans in systems; fans are described in X-6.1.</p> <p>The implementation type of the Fan adaptation is: "instantiated".</p> <p>The Fan adaptation shall conform to the requirements for central elements as defined by the Profile Registration profile (see DSP1033).</p> <p>Table X8 lists the element requirements of the Fan adaptation.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Table X8 – Fan: Element requirements</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Element</th> <th>Requirement</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="3">Base adaptations</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ExampleSensors::SensoredElement</td> <td>Conditional</td> <td>Condition: The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented; see X-7.2.4. See DSPxxxx.</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3">Properties</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OperationalStatus[]</td> <td>Mandatory</td> <td>See CIM schema definition.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>HealthState</td> <td>Mandatory</td> <td>See CIM schema definition.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>VariableSpeed</td> <td>Mandatory</td> <td>See CIM schema definition.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DesiredSpeed</td> <td>Conditional</td> <td>Condition: The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented; see X-7.2.4. See CIM schema definition.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ActiveCooling</td> <td>Mandatory</td> <td>Value shall be True</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EnabledState</td> <td>Mandatory</td> <td>See X-7.4.3.3.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>RequestedState</td> <td>Conditional</td> <td>Condition: The FanStateManagement feature is implemented; see X-7.2.2. See X-7.4.3.4.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ElementName</td> <td>Conditional</td> <td>Condition: The FanElementNameManagement feature is implemented; see X-7.2.3. See CIM schema definition.</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3">Methods</td> </tr> <tr> <td>RequestStateChange()</td> <td>Conditional</td> <td>Condition: The FanStateManagement feature is implemented; see X-7.2.2. See X-7.4.3.5.</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3">Operations</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GetInstance()</td> <td>Mandatory</td> <td>See DSP0223.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GetClassInstancesWithPath()</td> <td>Mandatory</td> <td>See DSP0223.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>			Element	Requirement	Description	Base adaptations			ExampleSensors::SensoredElement	Conditional	Condition: The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented; see X-7.2.4. See DSPxxxx.	Properties			OperationalStatus[]	Mandatory	See CIM schema definition.	HealthState	Mandatory	See CIM schema definition.	VariableSpeed	Mandatory	See CIM schema definition.	DesiredSpeed	Conditional	Condition: The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented; see X-7.2.4. See CIM schema definition.	ActiveCooling	Mandatory	Value shall be True	EnabledState	Mandatory	See X-7.4.3.3.	RequestedState	Conditional	Condition: The FanStateManagement feature is implemented; see X-7.2.2. See X-7.4.3.4.	ElementName	Conditional	Condition: The FanElementNameManagement feature is implemented; see X-7.2.3. See CIM schema definition.	Methods			RequestStateChange()	Conditional	Condition: The FanStateManagement feature is implemented; see X-7.2.2. See X-7.4.3.5.	Operations			GetInstance()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .	GetClassInstancesWithPath()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
Element	Requirement	Description																																																			
Base adaptations																																																					
ExampleSensors::SensoredElement	Conditional	Condition: The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented; see X-7.2.4. See DSPxxxx.																																																			
Properties																																																					
OperationalStatus[]	Mandatory	See CIM schema definition.																																																			
HealthState	Mandatory	See CIM schema definition.																																																			
VariableSpeed	Mandatory	See CIM schema definition.																																																			
DesiredSpeed	Conditional	Condition: The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented; see X-7.2.4. See CIM schema definition.																																																			
ActiveCooling	Mandatory	Value shall be True																																																			
EnabledState	Mandatory	See X-7.4.3.3.																																																			
RequestedState	Conditional	Condition: The FanStateManagement feature is implemented; see X-7.2.2. See X-7.4.3.4.																																																			
ElementName	Conditional	Condition: The FanElementNameManagement feature is implemented; see X-7.2.3. See CIM schema definition.																																																			
Methods																																																					
RequestStateChange()	Conditional	Condition: The FanStateManagement feature is implemented; see X-7.2.2. See X-7.4.3.5.																																																			
Operations																																																					
GetInstance()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .																																																			
GetClassInstancesWithPath()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .																																																			

GetClassInstancePaths()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetAssociatedInstancesWithPath()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetAssociatedInstancePaths()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetReferencingInstancesWithPath()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetReferencingInstancePaths()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
ModifyInstance()	Optional	See X-7.4.3.6, and DSP0223 .

X-7.4.3.2 Property: EnabledState

The value of the EnabledState property shall convey the state of the represented fan. Admissible values are 2 (Enabled) and 3 (Disabled); all other values shall not be used. A value of 2 (Enabled) shall convey that the fan is activated and working; a value of 3 (Disable) shall convey that the fan is inactive.

X-7.4.3.3 Property: RequestedState

The value of the RequestedState property shall convey the most recently requested or desired state of the represented fan. Admissible values are 2 (Enabled) and 3 (Disabled); all other values shall not be used. A value of 2 (Enabled) shall convey that the fan is desired to be activated; a value of 3 (Disable) shall convey that the fan is desired to be inactive.

X-7.4.3.4 Method: RequestStateChange()

X-7.4.3.4.1 General

The requirement level of the RequestStateChange() method is conditional.

Condition: The FanStateManagement feature is implemented; see X-7.2.2.

The behavior of the method shall depend on the value of the RequestedState parameter; this is referred to as the *requested state* in this subclause. The Fan instance on that the method is invoked is referred to as the *target instance* in this subclause. The fan in the managed environment that is represented by the target instance is referred to as the *target fan* in this subclause.

The method semantics shall be as follows:

- The value of the RequestedState property in the target instance shall reflect the requested state.
- If the requested state is 2 (Enabled), the implementation shall execute an activation of the target fan.
- If the requested state is 3 (Disabled), the implementation shall execute a deactivation of the target fan.
- Any other requested state shall be rejected, issuing messages WBEMMREG::WIPG0227 and PLATMREG::PLATxxx1.
- Depending on the outcome of the operation executed by the implementation, the resulting state shall be reflected by the value of the EnabledState property.

Table X-9 lists the parameter requirements for the RequestStateChange() method.

Table X-9 – RequestStateChange(): Parameter requirements

Name	Description
RequestedState	In, see X-7.4.3.4.2.
TimeoutPeriod	In, see X-7.4.3.4.3.
Job	Out, see X-7.4.3.4.4.
ReturnValue	See schema definition.

X-7.4.3.4.2 RequestedState

A non-Null instance path shall be returned if a job was started; otherwise, Null shall be returned.

X-7.4.3.4.3 TimeoutPeriod

Client-specified maximum amount of time the transition to a new state is supposed to take:

- 0 or Null – No maximum time is specified
- Non-Null – The value specifies the maximum time allowed

Note that for the case that the value is Non-Null and not 0, and the implementation is unable to support the semantics of the TimeoutPeriod parameter, the schema definition of the adapted class requires that the value 4098 (Use of Timeout Parameter Not Supported) is returned.

X-7.4.3.4.4 Job

A ConcreteJob (see ...) instance path shall be returned if a job was started; otherwise, Null shall be returned.

X-7.4.3.4.6 Error reporting requirements

Table X-11 specifies the error reporting requirements for the RequestStateChange() method. These requirements apply on top of those required by [DSP0223](#) for the InvokeMethod() operation.

Table X-11 – RequestStateChange(): Error reporting requirements

Reporting mechanism	Requirement level	Description
WBEMMREG::WIPG0208, PLATMREG::PLAT9001	Mandatory	The requested state is not supported for the fan.
WBEMMREG::WIPG0208, PLATMREG::PLAT9002	Mandatory	A non-Null value for the Timeout parameter is not supported.
WBEMMREG::WIPG02019	Mandatory	Method is not implemented.
WBEMMREG::WIPG0227, PLATMREG::PLAT9003	Mandatory	Fan cannot be disabled due to excessive temperature. The detail text of WIPG0227 should be omitted or should indicate that the next message details the error.

WBEMMREG::WIPG0227	Mandatory	Any other failure. As defined in WIPG0227, the failure shall be described in its detail text.
CIM_ERR_SERVER_LIMITS_EXCEEDED	Mandatory	More element changes are under way than the configured limit of concurrent changes, or there is a resource shortage in the WBEM server.

...

X-7.4.3.5 Operation: ModifyInstance()

The implementation of the ModifyInstance() operation for the Fan adaptation is optional.

The behavior of the method shall depend on the Fan instance that is passed in as the value of the ModifiedInstance parameter; this is referred to as the *input instance* in this subclause. The value of the EnabledState property in the input instance is referred to as the *requested state* in this subclause. The key properties in the input instance shall be used to identify the Fan instance for which the modification is requested; this instance is referred to as the *target instance* in this subclause. All other properties in the input instance shall be ignored. The fan in the managed environment that is represented by the target instance is referred to as the *target fan* in this subclause. Using these terms, the method semantics with respect to the requested state shall be identical to those defined for the RequestStateChange() method; see X-7.4.3.4.

This profile does not specify the implementation behavior regarding other properties of the input instance.

Table X-12 specifies the error reporting requirements of the ModifyInstance() method. These requirements apply on top of those required by [DSP0223](#) for the ModifyInstance() operation.

Table X-12 – ModifyInstance(): Error reporting requirements

Reporting mechanism	Requirement level	Description
WBEMMREG::WIPG0227, PLATMREG::PLATxxx1	Mandatory	Operation not supported for the fan
WBEMMREG::WIPG0227, PLATMREG::PLATxxx2	Mandatory	Temperature too high for disabling the fan
WBEMMREG::WIPG0227, PLATMREG::PLATxxx3	Mandatory	Insufficient power for enabling the fan

...

X-7.4.4 Adaptation: FanInSystem: CIM_SystemDevice

The FanInSystem association adaptation models the relationship between fans and their containing system.

The implementation type of the FanInSystem adaptation is: "instantiated".

Each Fan (see X-7.4.3) instance shall be associated through a FanInSystem instance to the FanSystem (see ...) instance representing the system containing the fan.

Table X-13 lists the implementation requirements for the FanInSystem adaptation.

Table X-13 – FanInSystem: Element requirements

Element	Requirement	Description
Properties		
GroupComponent	Mandatory	Key: Value shall reference the System instance representing the system that contains the fan Multiplicity: 1
PartComponent	Mandatory	Key: Value shall reference the Fan instance representing a fan Multiplicity: *
Operations		
GetInstance()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetClassInstancesWithPath()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetClassInstancePaths()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .

X-7.4.5 Adaptation: FanCapabilities: CIM_EnabledLogicalElementCapabilities

The FanCapabilities adaptation models the capabilities of fans in managed systems.

The requirement level of the FanCapabilities adaptation is conditional.

Condition: One or more of the following conditions:

- The FanStateManagement feature is implemented; for feature definition see X-7.2.2.
- The FanElementNameEdit feature is implemented; for feature definition see X-7.2.3.

The implementation type of the FanCapabilities adaptation is: "instantiated".

For each fan supporting the FanStateManagement feature or the FanElementNameEdit feature the capabilities of that fan shall be represented by a FanCapabilities instance.

Table X-14 lists the element requirements for this class adaptation.

Table X-14 – FanCapabilities: Element requirements

Element	Requirement	Description
Properties		
RequestedStatesSupported[]	Conditional	Condition: The FanStateManagement feature is implemented; see X-7.2.2. See CIM schema definition.
ElementNameEditSupported	Conditional	Condition: The ElementNameEdit feature is implemented; see X-7.2.3. If the ElementNameEdit feature is supported, the value shall be True,

		otherwise False.
MaxElementNameLen	Conditional	Condition: The ElementNameEditSupported property is implemented. See CIM schema definition.

Operations

GetInstance()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetClassInstancesWithPath()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetClassInstancePaths()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetAssociatedInstancesWithPath()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetAssociatedInstancePaths()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetReferencingInstancesWithPath()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetReferencingInstancePaths()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .

X-7.4.6 Adaptation: CapabilitiesOfFan: CIM_ElementCapabilities

The CapabilitiesOfFan adaptation models the relationship between a fan and its capabilities.

The requirement level of the CapabilitiesOfFan adaptation is conditional.

Condition: The FanCapabilities adaptation is implemented; see X-7.4.5.

The implementation type of the CapabilitiesOfFan adaptation is: "instantiated".

Each FanCapabilities (see X-7.4.5) instance shall be associated through a CapabilitiesOfFan instance to the Fan (see X-7.4.3) instance for which it represents capabilities.

Table X-15 lists the element requirements for this association adaptation.

Table X-15 – CapabilitiesOfFan: Element requirements

Element	Requirement	Description
Properties		
ManagedElement	Mandatory	Key: Value shall reference the Fan instance representing a fan Multiplicity: 1..*
Capabilities	Mandatory	Key: Value shall reference the CIM_EnabledLogicalElement instance representing the fans capabilities Multiplicity: 0..1
Operations		
GetInstance()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetClassInstancesWithPath()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetClassInstancePaths()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .

X-7.4.7 Adaptation: FanSensor: CIM_Sensor

The FanSensor adaptation models fans with discrete speed sensors.

The requirement level of the FanSensor adaptation is conditional.

Condition: All of the following:

- The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented (see X-7.2.4).
- Fan speed sensors within the managed environment support reporting discrete speed.

The implementation type of the FanSensor adaptation is: "instantiated".

Fan speed sensors within the managed environment that support reporting discrete speed may be represented by FanSensor instances.

Table X-16 lists the element requirements for this class adaptation.

Table X-16 – FanSensor: Element requirements

Element	Requirement	Description
Base adaptations		
FanSensors::Sensor	Mandatory	See DSPxxxx.
Properties		
SensorType	Mandatory	Value shall be 5 (Tachometer).
Operations		
GetInstance()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetClassInstancesWithPath()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetClassInstancePaths()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetAssociatedInstancesWithPath()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetAssociatedInstancePaths()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetReferencingInstancesWithPath()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetReferencingInstancePaths()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .

X-7.4.8 Adaptation: FanNumericSensor: CIM_NumericSensor

The FanNumericSensor adaptation models fan speed sensors that report analogous speed.

The requirement level of the FanNumericSensor adaptation is conditional.

Condition: All of the following:

- The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented; see X-7.2.4.
- Fan speed sensors within the managed environment support reporting analogous speed.

The implementation type of the FanNumericSensor adaptation is: "instantiated".

Table X-17 lists the element requirements for this class adaptation.

Table X-17 – FanNumericSensor: Element requirements

Elements	Requirement	Notes
Base adaptations		
FanSensors::NumericSensor	Mandatory	See DSPxxxx.
Properties		
SensorType	Mandatory	Value shall be 5 (Tachometer)
BaseUnits	Mandatory	Value shall be 19 (RPM)
RateUnits	Mandatory	Value shall be 0 (None)
Operations		
GetInstance()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetClassInstancesWithPath()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetClassInstancePaths()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetAssociatedInstancesWithPath()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetAssociatedInstancePaths()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetReferencingInstancesWithPath()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetReferencingInstancePaths()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .

X-7.4.9 Adaptation: SensorOfFan: CIM_AssociatedSensor

The SensorOfFan adaptation models the relationship between fans and their sensors.

The requirement level of the SensorOfFan adaptation is conditional.

Condition: The FanSpeedSensor feature is implemented; for feature definition see X-7.2.4.

The implementation type of the SensorOfFan adaptation is: "instantiated".

Each FanSensor (see X-7.4.7) or FanNumericSensor (see X-7.4.8) instance shall be associated through a SensorOfFan instance to the Fan instance representing the monitored fan.

Table X-18 lists the element requirements for this association adaptation.

Table X-18 – SensorOfFan: Element requirements

Element	Requirement	Description
Base adaptations		
ExampleSensors::AssociatedSensor	Mandatory	See DSPxxxx.

Properties		
Antecedent	Mandatory	Key: Value shall reference the FanSensor (see X-7.4.7) instance or the FanNumericSensor (see X-7.4.8) instance representing the sensor attached to the fan. Multiplicity: 1
Dependent	Mandatory	Key: Value shall reference the Fan instance representing a fan Multiplicity: *
Operations		
GetInstance()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetClassInstancesWithPath()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
GetClassInstancePaths()	Mandatory	See DSP0223 .
...		

4854

4855 **A.4.5 Examples of subclauses defining indication adaptations**

4856 Table A.7 details examples of subclauses within the "Adaptation" subclause of the "Implementation"
 4857 clause that define specific adaptations of indications.

4858

Table A.7 – Examples of subclauses defining specific indication adaptations

<p>X-7.4.34 Adaptation: FanAddedAlert: CIM_AlertIndication</p> <p>The FanAddedAlert indication reports the event that a fan was added to a computer system; for details, see the definition of message PLATMREG::PLAT0456.</p> <p>The requirement level of the FanAddedAlert indication adaptation is conditional.</p> <p>The implementation type of the FanAddedAlert adaptation is: "indication".</p> <p>Condition: The FanLifecycleAlerts feature is implemented; see X-7.2.5.</p> <p>Table X-45 lists the element requirements for this indication adaptation.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Table X-45 – FanAddedAlert: Element requirements</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Element</th> <th>Requirement</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="3">Base adaptations</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Indications::AlertIndication</td> <td>Mandatory</td> <td>See DSP1054.</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3">Alert messages</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PLATMREG::PLAT0456</td> <td>Mandatory</td> <td>See DSP8007.</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3">Properties</td> </tr> <tr> <td>AlertingManagedElement</td> <td>Mandatory</td> <td>Value shall reference the Fan instance representing the added fan.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MessageID</td> <td>Mandatory</td> <td>Value shall match "PLAT0456".</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OwningEntity</td> <td>Mandatory</td> <td>Value shall be "DMTF".</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MessageArguments[0]</td> <td>Mandatory</td> <td>Value shall be identical to the value of the ElementName property in the Fan instance representing the added fan; see X-7.4.3.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MessageArguments[1]</td> <td>Mandatory</td> <td>Value shall be in WBEM URI format and refer to the CIM_ComputerSystem instance representing the scoping computer system.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>			Element	Requirement	Description	Base adaptations			Indications::AlertIndication	Mandatory	See DSP1054 .	Alert messages			PLATMREG::PLAT0456	Mandatory	See DSP8007.	Properties			AlertingManagedElement	Mandatory	Value shall reference the Fan instance representing the added fan.	MessageID	Mandatory	Value shall match "PLAT0456".	OwningEntity	Mandatory	Value shall be "DMTF".	MessageArguments[0]	Mandatory	Value shall be identical to the value of the ElementName property in the Fan instance representing the added fan; see X-7.4.3.	MessageArguments[1]	Mandatory	Value shall be in WBEM URI format and refer to the CIM_ComputerSystem instance representing the scoping computer system.
Element	Requirement	Description																																	
Base adaptations																																			
Indications::AlertIndication	Mandatory	See DSP1054 .																																	
Alert messages																																			
PLATMREG::PLAT0456	Mandatory	See DSP8007.																																	
Properties																																			
AlertingManagedElement	Mandatory	Value shall reference the Fan instance representing the added fan.																																	
MessageID	Mandatory	Value shall match "PLAT0456".																																	
OwningEntity	Mandatory	Value shall be "DMTF".																																	
MessageArguments[0]	Mandatory	Value shall be identical to the value of the ElementName property in the Fan instance representing the added fan; see X-7.4.3.																																	
MessageArguments[1]	Mandatory	Value shall be in WBEM URI format and refer to the CIM_ComputerSystem instance representing the scoping computer system.																																	
<p>X-7.4.35 Adaptation: FanRemovedAlert: CIM_AlertIndication</p> <p>The FanRemovedAlert indication reports the event that a fan was removed from a computer system; for details, see the definition of message PLATMREG::PLAT0457.</p> <p>The requirement level of the FanRemovedAlert indication adaptation is conditional.</p> <p>Condition: The FanLifecycleAlerts feature is implemented; see X-7.2.5.</p> <p>The implementation type of the FanRemovedAlert adaptation is: "indication".</p> <p>Table X-46 lists the element requirements for this indication adaptation.</p>																																			

Table X-46 – FanRemovedAlert: Element requirements

Element	Requirement	Description
Base adaptations		
Indications::AlertIndication	Mandatory	See DSP1054 .
Alert messages		
PLATMREG::PLAT0457	Mandatory	See DSP8007.
Properties		
AlertingManagedElement	Mandatory	Value shall reference the Fan instance that represented the removed fan.
MessageID	Mandatory	Value shall match "PLAT0457".
OwningEntity	Mandatory	Value shall be "DMTF".
MessageArguments[0]	Mandatory	Value shall be identical to the value of the ElementName property in the Fan instance that represented the removed fan; see X-7.4.3. NOTE: The Fan instance no longer exists.
MessageArguments[1]	Mandatory	Value shall be in WBEM URI format and refer to the CIM_ComputerSystem instance representing the scoping computer system.

X-7.4.36 Adaptation: FanFailedAlert: CIM_AlertIndication

The FanFailedAlert indication reports the event that a fan within a computer system failed; for details, see the definition of message PLATMREG::PLAT0458.

The requirement level of the FanFailedAlert indication adaptation is optional.

The implementation type of the FanFailedAlert adaptation is: "indication".

Table X-47 lists the element requirements for this indication adaptation.

Table X-47 – FanFailedAlert: Element requirements

Element	Requirement	Description
Base adaptations		
Indications::AlertIndication	Mandatory	See DSP1054 .
Alert messages		
PLATMREG::PLAT0458	Mandatory	See DSP8007.
Properties		
AlertingManagedElement	Mandatory	Value shall reference the Fan instance representing the failed fan.
MessageID	Mandatory	Value shall match "PLAT0458".

OwningEntity	Mandatory	Value shall be "DMTF".
MessageArguments[0]	Mandatory	Value shall be identical to the value of the ElementName property in the Fan instance representing the failed fan; see X-7.4.3.
MessageArguments[1]	Mandatory	Value shall be in WBEM URI format and refer to the CIM_ComputerSystem instance representing the scoping computer system.

X-7.4.37 Adaptation: FanReturnedToOKAlert: CIM_AlertIndication

The FanReturnedToOKAlert indication reports the event that a fan within a computer system returns to normal operation mode; for details, see the definition of message PLATMREG::PLAT0459.

The requirement level of the FanReturnedToOKAlert indication adaptation is optional.

The implementation type of the FanReturnedToOKAlert adaptation is: "indication".

Table X-48 lists the element requirements for this indication adaptation.

Table X-48 – FanReturnedToOKAlert: Element requirements

Element	Requirement	Description
Base adaptations		
Indications::AlertIndication	Mandatory	See DSP1054 .
Alert messages		
PLATMREG::PLAT0459	Mandatory	See DSP8007.
Properties		
AlertingManagedElement	Mandatory	Value shall reference the Fan instance representing the fan that returned to normal operational state.
MessageID	Mandatory	Value shall match "PLAT0459".
OwningEntity	Mandatory	Value shall be "DMTF".
MessageArguments[0]	Mandatory	Value shall be identical to the value of the ElementName property in the CIM_Fan instance representing the fan that returned to the OK state.
MessageArguments[1]	Mandatory	Value shall be in WBEM URI format and refer to the CIM_ComputerSystem instance representing the scoping computer system.

X-7.4.38 Adaptation: FanDegradedAlert: CIM_AlertIndication

The FanDegradedAlert indication reports the event that a fan within a computer system starts operating in a degraded mode; for details, see the definition of message PLATMREG::PLAT0460.

The requirement level of the FanDegradedAlert indication adaptation is optional.

The implementation type of the FanDegradedAlert adaptation is: "indication".

Table X-49 lists the element requirements for this indication adaptation.

Table X-49 – FanDegradedAlert: Element requirements

Element	Requirement	Description
Base adaptations		
Indications::AlertIndication	Mandatory	See DSP1054 .
Alert messages		
PLATMREG::PLAT0460	Mandatory	See DSP8007.
Properties		
AlertingManagedElement	Mandatory	Value shall reference the Fan instance representing the fan that is in a degraded state.
MessageID	Mandatory	Value shall be "PLAT0460".
OwningEntity	Mandatory	Value shall be "DMTF".
MessageArguments[0]	Mandatory	Value shall be identical to the value of the ElementName property in the CIM_Fan instance representing the failed fan operating in a degraded mode.
MessageArguments[1]	Mandatory	Value shall be in WBEM URI format and refer to the CIM_ComputerSystem instance representing the scoping computer system.

4859 **A.5 Example of the "Use cases" clause**

4860 Table A.8 provides an example of the "Use cases" profile specification clause.

4861 **Table A.8 – Example of "Use cases" clause**

<p>X-8 Use cases</p> <p>...</p> <p>X-8.3 DetermineFanState</p> <p>This use case describes the use of the GetInstance() operation as adapted by this profile (see X-8.2.2) inspecting the state of a fan.</p> <p>X-8.3.1 Preconditions</p> <p>The client knows the instance path of the Fan instance representing the fan.</p> <p>X-8.3.2 Flow of activities</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) The client obtains the Fan instance, invoking the GetInstance() operation with parameter values set as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - The value of the InstancePath parameter is set to the input instance path that refers to the
--

Fan instance.

- Optionally, the value of the IncludedProperties[] array property may be set to one element whose value is "EnabledState"; this would reduce the returned instance to include only the value of the EnabledState property.

The implementation executes the operation as requested by the client.

If the GetInstance() operation returns, the use-case continues with step 2).

If the GetInstance() operation causes an exception, the use-case continues with step 4).

2) The client inspects the return value

- A return value of 0 indicates successful execution of the intrinsic operation; the use-case continues with step 3).
- A return value of 1 (Not Supported) indicates that the implementation does not support the method; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.3.3.2 apply.
- A return value of 2 (Unknown or Unspecified Error) indicates an error situation that is not covered by the profile specification; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in 9.3.3.2 apply.

3) The client inspects the value of the EnabledState property of the returned CIM_Fan instance:

- A value of 0 (Unknown) indicates that the state of the fan is unknown; this may be a temporary condition.
- A value of 2 (Enabled) indicates that the fan is active.
- A value of 3 (Disabled) indicates that the fan is inactive.
- A value of 4 (Shutting Down) indicates that the fan is in the process of deactivating.
- A value of 10 (Starting) indicates that the fan is in the process of activating.
- Other values are not adapted by this profile.

This completes the use-case; the postconditions in X-8.3.3.1 apply.

4) The GetInstance() intrinsic operation caused an exception. The client inspects the CIM_Error instances returned as part of the exception.

X-8.3.3 Postconditions

This subclause lists possible situations after the use case execution.

X-8.3.3.1 Success

The fan state as reflected by the value of the EnabledState property is known to the client.

X-8.3.3.2 Failure

The fan state could not be determined; reasons were reflected through either through the value of the return value or through CIM_Error instances delivered as part of an exception.

...

X-8.7 EnableFan

This use-case describes the use of the RequestStateChange() method as adapted by this profile (see X-8.1.1) for enabling a fan.

X-8.7.1 Preconditions

- The client knows the instance path of the CIM_Fan instance representing the fan.
- Fan state changes are supported for that instance (for detection see X-9.4) and the fan is currently disabled (for inspection see X-8.3).

X-8.7.2 Flow of activities

- 1) The client requests activation of the fan, invoking the RequestStateChange() method on the input instance representing the fan, with parameter values set as follows:
 - The value of the RequestedState property is 2 (Enabled)
 - The value of the TimeoutPeriod property is not provided (Null)

The implementation executes the method as requested by the client.

If the RequestStateChange() method returns, the use-case continues with step 2).

If the RequestStateChange() method causes an exception, the use-case continues with step 3).

- 2) The client inspects the return value:
 - A return value of 0 indicates successful execution of the method. This completes the use-case; the post-conditions in X-8.7.4.1 apply.
 - A return value of 1 (Not Supported) indicates that the implementation does not support the method; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.2 apply.
 - A return value of 2 (Unknown or Unspecified Error) indicates an error situation that is not covered by the profile specification; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.3 apply.

- A return value of 4 (Failed) indicates that the implementation was unable to enable the fan; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.2 apply.
 - A return value of 5 (Invalid Parameter) indicates that one or more of the input parameters were invalid; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.2 apply.
 - A return value of 6 (In Use) indicates that the fan is in use by another management activity; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.3 apply.
 - A return value of 4096 (Method Parameter Checked – Job Stared) indicates that an asynchronous task was started that performs and controls the fan state change operation that is represented by a CIM_ConcreteJob instance referenced by the value of the Job output parameter; the use-case continues with step 4).
 - A return value of 4097 (Invalid State Transition) indicates that the fan is in a state that (presently) does not allow a transition to the requested state; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.2 apply.
- 3) The RequestStateChange() method caused an exception. The client inspects the CIM_Error instances returned as part of the exception. This terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.2 apply.
- 4) The client obtains the CIM_ConcreteJob instance, invoking the GetInstance() operation with parameter values set as follows:
- The value of the InstancePath parameter is set to value of the Job output parameter returned from step 1).

The implementation executes the intrinsic operation as requested by the client.

If the GetInstance() intrinsic operation returns, the use-case continues with step 5).

If the GetInstance() intrinsic operation causes an exception, the client inspects the CIM_Error instances returned as part of the exception. This terminates the use case; the postconditions in X-8.7.4.3 apply.

- 5) The client inspects the value of the JobState property:
- A value of 7 (Completed) indicates successful execution of the use-case. This completes the use-case; the post-conditions in X-8.7.4.1 apply.
 - A value matching { 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 11 | 12 } (New | Starting | Running | Suspended | Service | Query pending) indicates that the asynchronous task has not yet finished; after waiting a certain delay, the client continues with repeating step 4).
 - Any other value matching indicates an error situation or a situation not anticipated in this profile; this terminates the use-case, the postconditions in X-8.7.4.2 apply.

X-8.7.4 Postconditions

This subclause lists possible situations after the use case execution.

X-8.7.4.1 Success

- The fan is enabled.
- If inspected for example by performing use-case X-8.3, the value of the EnabledState property in the instance of the CIM_Fan class representing the fan has the value 1 (Enabled).

NOTE The client should regularly validate (for example through the application of use-case X-8.3) that the fan remains enabled, as conditions in the managed environment (failures, activities by other operators, etc.) could cause fan state changes. Alternatively the client could monitor CIM_InstModification indications indicating state changes in the CIM_Fan instance representing the fan.

X-8.7.4.2 Failure with unchanged state

The fan remains disabled.

X-8.7.4.3 Failure with undefined state

The state of the fan is undetermined.

Annex B (informative)

Regular expression syntax

4862
4863
4864
4865

4866 This annex defines the regular expression syntax used in profile specifications to specify the format of
4867 values, especially those representing identifiers. The regular expression grammar below uses Augmented
4868 BNF (ABNF) as defined in [RFC5234](#).

4869 The ABNF usage conventions defined in the Document conventions of this guide apply.

4870 Profile regular expressions are a subset of the regular expressions defined in [UNIX Regular Expressions](#).

4871 The following elements are defined:

4872 **Special characters**

4873 `SpecialChar = "." / "\" / "[" / "]" / "^" / "$" / "*" / "+" / "?" /`
4874 `"/" / "|"`

4875 where

4876	<code>"."</code>	matches any single character
4877	<code>"\"</code>	escapes the next character so that it isn't a <code>SpecialChar</code>
4878	<code>"["</code>	starts a <code>CharacterChoice</code>
4879	<code>"]"</code>	ends a <code>CharacterChoice</code>
4880	<code>"^"</code>	indicates a <code>LeftAnchor</code>
4881	<code>"\$"</code>	indicates a <code>RightAnchor</code>
4882	<code>"*"</code>	indicates that the preceding item is matched zero or more times.
4883	<code>"+"</code>	indicates that the preceding item will be matched one or more times.
4884	<code>"?"</code>	indicates that the preceding item is optional,
4885		and will be matched at most once.
4886	<code>" "</code>	separates choices

4887 **Ordinary characters**

4888 `OrdinaryChar = UnicodeChar, except SpecialChar`

4889 where

4890 `UnicodeChar` refers to any Unicode character, as defined in [RFC3629](#).

4891 **Escaped special characters**

4892 `EscapedChar = "\" SpecialChar`

4893 **Simple character**

4894 `SimpleChar = OrdinaryChar / EscapedChar`

4895 **Character sequence**

4896 `CharacterSequence = SimpleChar [CharacterSequence]`

4897 A `CharacterSequence` is a sequence of `SimpleChars`, for example:

4898 "ABC" matching "ABC", or
 4899 "D.F" matching "DAF", "DBF", "DCF", and so forth.

4900 **Character choice**

4901 CharacterChoice = "[" CharacterSequence "]" ["^"]

4902 A CharacterChoice defines a set of possible characters. It is indicated by square brackets
 4903 ("[" and "]") enclosing the set of characters.

- 4904 – If a caret ("^") is *not* suffixed after the closing bracket, any character from the set
 4905 matches. For example, "r[au]" matches "rat" or "rut".
- 4906 – If a caret ("^") is suffixed after the closing bracket, any character *not* in the set matches.
 4907 For example, "r[au]^t" matches any three-character sequence with the middle character not
 4908 being "a" or "u", for example, "ret" or "r.t".

4909 **Single character**

4910 SingleChar = "." / SimpleChar / CharacterChoice

4911 For example,

4912 "D.F" matching "DAF", "DBF", "DCF", and so forth, or

4913 "GH[IJ]" matching "GHI" or "GHJ".

4914 **Multipliers**

4915 Multiplier = "*" / "+" / "?" / "{" UnsignedInt ["," [UnsignedInt]] "}"

4916 where

- 4917 "*" indicates that the preceding item is matched zero or more times
- 4918 "?" indicates that the preceding item is matched zero or one time
 4919 (optional item)
- 4920 "+" indicates that the preceding item is matched one or more times

4921 UnsignedInt is an unsigned integer number

4922 **Multiplied character**

4923 MultipliedChar = SingleChar [Multiplier]

4924 A MultipliedChar is a SingleChar with a Multiplier applying, for example:

4925 "C*" matching "", "C", "CC", "CCC", and so forth, or

4926 "[EF]{1,2}" matching "E", "F", "EE", "EF", "FE" or "FF"

4927 **Character expression**

4928 CharacterExpression = MultipliedChar [CharacterExpression]

4929 A CharacterExpression is a descriptor for a sequence of one or more characters, for
 4930 example:

4931	"X"	matching "X" only,
4932	"ABC"	matching "ABC" only,
4933	"ABC*"	matching "AB", "ABC", "ABCC", "ABCCC", and so forth,
4934	"A[BC]D"	matching "ABD" or "ACD", or
4935	"1[.]{2,3}n"	matching "1..n" or "1...n".

4936 **Grouping**

4937 Grouping = "(" CharacterExpression ")" [Multiplier]

4938 A Grouping is a CharacterExpression that optionally can be multiplied, for example:

4939 "(ABC)" matching "ABC",

4940 "(XYZ)+" matching "XYZ", "XYZXYZ", "XYZXYZXYZ", and so forth.

4941 **ChoiceElement**

4942 ChoiceElement = Grouping / CharacterExpression

4943 **Choice**

4944 Choice = ChoiceElement ["|" Choice]

4945 A Choice is a choice from one or more ChoiceElements, for example:

4946 "(DEF)?" matching "" or "DEF",

4947 "GHI" matching "GHI", or

4948 "(DEF)?|GHI" matching "", "DEF", or "GHI".

4949 **Left anchor**

4950 LeftAnchor = "^"

4951 A LeftAnchor forces a match at the beginning of a string.

4952 **Right anchor**

4953 RightAnchor = "\$"

4954 A RightAnchor forces a match at the end of a string.

4955 **AnchoredExpression**

4956 AnchoredExpression = [RightAnchor] Choice [LeftAnchor]

4957 An AnchoredExpression is a Choice that is optionally anchored to the left end, to the right
4958 end, or to both ends of a string.

4959 **AnchoredChoice**

4960 AnchoredChoice = AnchoredExpression [AnchoredChoice]

4961 An `AnchoredChoice` is a choice from one or more `AnchoredExpressions`.

4962 **RegularExpressionInProfile**

4963 `RegularExpressionInProfile` = `AnchoredChoice`

4964 A regular expression within a profile is an `AnchoredChoice`.

**Annex C
(informative)**

Change history

4965
4966
4967
4968

4969

Version	Date	Description
1.0.0	2006-06-14	Initial final release
1.0.1	2009-08-05	DMTF Standard Release. Changes: Updated copyright statement Updated and corrected references listed in 2 Added provisions for specifying a scoping algorithm in 6.1 Simplified and corrected profile conventions for operations in 6.4.2 Added Annex F, Experimental Content Added Annex G, Change Log Added Bibliography Minor text corrections throughout the document.
1.1.0k	2009-11-03	Work in progress release. Changes: New concepts: Adaptations, features and events Deprecation of multiple inheritance for profiles Rules for the definition of indications Rules for defining the relationship to the managed environment Condensed structure of profile specifications Many clarifications and corrections
1.1.0m	2010-06-11	Work in progress release. Changes: Definition of metric-related requirements Definition of indication-related requirements DMTF adaptation diagrams
1.1.0n	2010-10-15	Work in progress release Changes: Many corrections and clarifications. Abstract profiles may reference DSP1033 Renamed the "Profile conventions for operations" subclause to "General requirements" Removed the following ABNF exceptions: Use of " " in place of "/" for choices Use of ".." in place of "-" for ranges Insignificance of whitespace Removed events as profile element (covered with indications now) Revised version of the merge algorithm Combined all element requirements in one table, including base elements such as base adaptations Introduced state descriptions as profile element (primarily for use-cases) Introduced error reporting requirements as an extension of standard message requirements
1.1.0o	2010-12-17	DMTF Draft Standard

		<p>Incorporated changes resulting from reviews:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Discourage use of "related profile" in favor of "referenced profile" • Divide referencing profiles into "profile derivation" and "profile usage" • Added requirement to specify operations using DSP0223 • Added definition of WBEM listener implementation conformance • Lowered the requirement for following the rules on when to use the "conditional" and "conditional exclusive" requirement levels, to a recommendation • Clarified allowable number of base profiles in a derived profile • Added requirement that the schema version of a derived profile is at least as recent as the most recent schema version of its base profiles • Clarified scoping relationship • Clarified which version of a profile is effectively referenced in a profile reference • Added provision to designate base adaptation candidates • Added rules for the repetition of schema requirements • Added provision for specifying requirements for instance creation and modification operations • Clarified that the PRP itself is exempted from the requirement that concrete profiles must reference the PRP • Lifted the requirement that state descriptions need to be named, for state descriptions defined within use cases • Lifted requirement to implement each used profile separately, and made that an implementation consideration • Adapted common text for "Terms and definitions" clause to the conventions set forth by the ISO/IEC Directives
<p>1.1.0</p>	<p>2011-06-30</p>	<p>DMTF Standard</p> <p>Incorporated changes resulting from comments:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refine the definition of requirement levels with respect to their impact on the implementation, and define how they are to be used in profiles • Synchronize the approaches for metrics and indications • Allow that indication/metric adaptations can also be defined on adaptations that are based on those in the Indications / Base Metrics profiles • Multiple alert message possible for one alert indication adaptation • Clarified that a business entity can be an "organization" • Introduce the concept of an implementation type for adaptations • Added the "prohibited" requirement level • Subcategories in the "Adaptation table" • Require that association adaptations, and adaptations they reference, are to be required separately in profiles, with the suggestion of defining a direct or feature based dependency • Allow concrete profiles to specify abstract adaptations (because those have no impact on clients or implementations) • Add provision to allow separate constraints to be specified for presentation, initialization and modification of properties • Add provisions to allow input value requirements for properties and method parameters • Prohibition of input values for key properties • Requiring profiles to define a CIM based discovery mechanism for conditional / conditional exclusive and optional profile elements that enables client to determine whether the profile element is implemented (see 7.5). • Lifted strong 20 word requirements in table cells to recommendation • Renamed "General requirements" subclause of "Adaptations" subclause to "Conventions" • Require a non-Null value for mandatory properties in adaptation instances (and for conditional / conditional exclusive properties, with the condition being True)

Bibliography

4970

4971 This clause lists references that are helpful for the application of this guide.

4972 DMTF DSP0200, *CIM Operations over HTTP 1.3*,

4973 http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP0200_1.3.pdf

4974 DMTF DSP1000, *Management Profile Specification Template 1.1*

4975 http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP1000_1.1.pdf

4976 UML Specifications,

4977 http://www.omg.org/technology/documents/modeling_spec_catalog.htm#UML

4978 *UML Intro: Practical UML, A Hands-In Introduction for Developers*,

4979 <http://bdn.borland.com/article/0,1410,31863,00.html>

4980